

The birth of mankynde, other wyse named the womans booke.

Netwely set forth, corrected, and
augmented. Whose con-
tentes ye may reade in
the Table of the
booke, and
most
playnely in the
prologue.

By Thomas Raynalde
Phisition.



53

Thom. Tanner (31)



Be it some Aristar-
chus maye perhappes
synde some lacke of
saythfulnesse and dili-
gence in this worke:
yet ther is none so fro-
ward to denie but that
there is some fruite &
profite to be founde
therin, seeing that it
commeth now abrode
much moze enlarged &
increased, & moze di-
ligently corrected then

it was befoze epyther in the Latine oz in the Englishe. And
where befoze in the other printer, there lacked matter neces-
sarie to the opening and declaration of the figures partey-
nyng to the inner partes: it is nowe so playnely set forth,
that the simplest mydwife which can reade, may both un-
derstande for her better instruction, and also other women
that haue neede of her helpe, the moze commoditie.

Wherfore my desyre is, that it may be receaued
and practised of mydwifes and all other
matrones, with no lesse successe,
then it is with good wyll
and desyre writ-
ten to pro-
fite
and to do good
to other.

The Table of this present Booke.



Pist, a Prologue
to the women
readers.

In this i. Cha-
piter is briefly
declared the co-
tentes of the
first Booke.

Capit. i.

In howe many
coates the body
is lapped or in-

uolued Cap. ii.

Fol. i.

Here is declared what the Muscles be. Cap. iii
Fol. iiii.

Of the Bell called Peritoneum.
Fol. b.

Cap. iiii.

The declaration of the names and nature of
the Matrix. Cap. b.

Fol. vi.

Of the wombe & his partes. Cap. vi.

Fol. vii.

Of the mother port. Cap. vii.

Fol. r.

Of the vesselles of seede called the stones, with
other thereto apperteynyng.

Cap. viii.

Fol. xi.

Of the seede bryngers. Cap. ix.

eodem.

Of the office and vse of these seede bryngers.

Cap. x.

Fol. xiiii.

Of the way by the which the seede is sent from
the stones, to the angles or corners of the ma-
trix. Cap. xi.

Fol. xix.

Here is declared the situation of the bladder in
women, Cap. xii.

Fol. xxi.

A ii

Of

The Table.

Of the baynes which resort to the Matrir, and the partes thereof. Item of the Termes and theyr course, with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii. fol. xxiii.

Of the three calles or wrappers wherein the infant is lapped. Cap. xiiii. fol. xxix.

Which of the three Matrir baynes containe the Termes, and how the mylke commeth to the womans breaſtes. Cap. xv. fol. xxxv.

The declaration by letters of the figures following, wherein be set forth to the eye euery part in woman mentioned in this booke before.

Of the fyrst figure. fol. xlii.

Of the seconde figure. fol. xlv.

Of the thirde figure. fol. xlvi.

The fourth figure. fol. xlviii.

The fyfth figure. fol. xlix.

The syxth figure. eodem.

The. vii. viii. and. ix. figures. fol. l.

The Table of the seconde Booke.



Of the tyme of birth, and whiche is called naturall or vnnaturall. Cap. i. fol. li.

Of easy and breaſy, difficult, or dolorous deliuerance, & the causes of it, with the signes howe to know and foresee the

same. Cap. ii.

fol. lxi.

Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe, and what remedies be for them that haue harde

The Table.

- harde labour. Cap. iiii. fol. lvi.
 Remedies and medicines by the whiche the labour may be made tollerable, easie, and without great paine. Cap. iiii. fol. lxxii.
 Howe the secondine or seconde byrth shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come not freely of his owne kynde. Cap. v. fol. lix.
 Howe many thynges chaunce to the women after theyr labour, & how to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the same. Cap. vi. fol. lxxiii.
 Of aborcementes or vntimely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen, & eased. Cap. vii. fol. lxxxi.
 Of dead byrthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix. fol. xc.
 In the last Chapter of this booke be bresfly resited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the cheefe purpose intended in this present booke. Cap. x. fol. xcvi.

The thyrd Booke.



In this fyrst Chapter of this thirde booke is fyrst declared the matters therein conteyned, & then how the infant newely borne must be handled, nourished, and looked to. Cap. i. folio. xcviij.
 A iiii Of

The Table.

- Of the Nurse, and her mylke, and how long the
chylde shoulde sucke. Capit. ii. fol. C.
- Of diuers diseases & infirmities which chaunce
to chyldren lately boꝛne, and the remedies
therefore. Cap. iii. fol. Ciii.
- Of the flire and ouermuch loosenes of the belly
fol. Ciiii.
- To vnloose the chylde, beyng bounde. fol. Cb.
- Remedie for the cough and distillation oꝝ ca-
tarrhes of the head. fol. Cvi.
- Remedie for short wynde. fol. Cvi.
- Against wheales oꝝ bladders on the tong. eodē.
- Of exulceration oꝝ clefture, chappynge oꝝ chy-
nyng of the mouth. fol. Cvi.
- Of apostumatton and runnyng of the eares.
fol. eodem.
- Of apostumatton in the head. fol. Cix.
- Of the swelling oꝝ bolning of the eyes. eodem.
- Of the scumme oꝝ whyte of the eye. eodem.
- Against immoderate heate of the feuer. eodem.
- Against frettyng oꝝ gnawynge in the belly.
folio. Cr.
- Agaynst swellynge of the body. eodem.
- Agaynst often sneelyng. eodem.
- Of whelkes in the body, and the cure. fol. Cxi.
- Against swelling of the coddēs. eodem.
- Agaynst swellynge of the Naupyl. eodem.
- Agaynst vnsleepynesse. fol. Cxii.
- Agaynst perrynge oꝝ the hyckate. eodem.
- Agaynst often parbreakynge by weakenesse and
feeblenesse of the stomache. fol. Cxiii.
- Agaynst fearful & terrible dreames. fol. Cxiii.
- Agaynst

The Table.

Against issuing forth of the fundament gutte.	eodem.
Folio.	eodem.
Agaynst Tenasmus.	eodem.
Agaynst wormes in the belly.	eodem.
Of chafyng or galling of any place of the body.	Cxi.
Folio.	eodem.
Of the falling sicknesse.	eodem.
Consumption or pyning away of the bodye.	Cxi.
Folio.	eodem.
Of lassitude, wearynesse, or heauinesse of the chylde's body.	eodem.
Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the palsy.	Fol. Cxii.
Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stoppyng of the brine.	Fol. Cxiii.
Of gogle eyes, or loking a squynt.	Fol. Cxiv.

The fourth booke.



en. Capi. ii.

If suche thinges the which shalbe entreated of in this fourth booke. Cap. i. fol. cxi. Of conception, shew many wayes it maye be hindred or letted. Cap. ii. fol. eodem. Howe many wayes conception maye be letted, and how the causes maye be knowne. fol. Cxii. Howe

The Table.

Howe to know whether lacke of conception be
of the woman or of the man, and howe it
may be perceaued whether she be conceaued
or no. Cap. iiii. fol. Cxxii.

Of certayne remedies and medicines whiche
may farther the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.
fol. Cxxiii.

Of diuers bellifying receiptes. fol. Cxxvi.

Of the causes and remedies for dandruffe of the
head. fol. Cxxvii.

To take away heere from places where it is
vnseemely. fol. Cxxviii.

To do away freckens or other spottes in the
face. fol. Cxxix.

To destroy wartes and suche lyke excrescencis
on the face, or els where. eodem.

To cleare and clarifie the skinne in the handes,
face, or other part of the body. fol. eodem.

To souple and mollifie the ruggednesse of the
skinne. fol. Cxxx.

Agaynst sodayne rpynges of pynples through
vnkynde heate in the face or els where. eodem.

To kepe and preserue the teeth cleane. eodem.

Of stynkyng breath. fol. eodem.

Of the ranke sauour of the armholdes. eodem.

¶ Here endeth the Table.

A Prologue to the women readers.



Ere in the begynnyng
of this presente Pro-
logue, I wyl folowe the
example of them, whi-
che when they byd any
ghestes to dyner oz sup-
per, are wont fyrst to
declare, what shall be
their cheare, what fare,
and howe manye dishes
they shall haue, pray-
yng them to take it in good worth, and to looke
for neither better ne worse then hath ben men-
tioned of: And euen so here wyl I do. Before
that ye enter into the readyng of this litle trea-
tise, I shall succinctly & in fewe wordes recite the
summe and cheefe contentes of the same, with the
btilitie and profite whiche may ensue to the dili-
gent and attentife ouerreader thereof, to the ende
that ye of these thinges beyng first well aduertis-
sed, may haue the more oz lesse courage to em-
ploy your labour in ouerlokyng and perusyng of
the same. For commonly it doth occasionate anye
man to be the more prompt, redy, and wyllyng
to take payne, when he is assured oz certified of
the profite, purpose, and fruite thereof comming,
and lykewyle it is a great pricke oz allurement,
entising and mouing a man to reade any booke,
when he is somewhat first admonished of the mat-
ters comprehended and contayned therein.

The entent
of thauctour

Wherefore nowe to come to our purpose, ye
Bi shall

The prologue.

The more
part of this
booke tran-
slated into
Englishe
thre or
foure yeres
past.

The name
of this booke.

shall vnderstande that about thre or foure yeres
passe, a certayne studious and diligent clarke,
at the requeste and desyre of dyuers honest and
sadde matrones, beyng of his acquayntaunce,
dyd translate out of Latine into Englyshe a great
parte of this booke, entiteling it accordyng to
the Latine inscription *De partu hominis*, that
is to saye, *Of the byrth of mankynde*: whiche we
nowe do name, *The womans booke*: for so
much as the most part, or well neare all there-
in entreated of, doth concerne and touche onely
women: In whiche his translation he varied
or declined nothyng at all from the steppes of
his Latine aucthour, obseruyng more fidelitie
in translatyng, then choise or discretion at that
tyme in admitting and allowyng manye thinges
in the same booke, greatly needyng admonition
and wary aduise or counsell to the readers, which
otherwyle myght sometimes vse that for a helpe,
the whiche should turne to a hinderaunce. Where-
fore I reuoluyng and earnestlye reuisyng from
top to toe the sayde booke, and herewithall consy-
dering the manifolde vtilitie and profite whiche
thereby mought ensue to all women (as tou-
chyng that purpose) yf it were more narrowlye
looked ouer, and with a strayghter iudgement
more exactly euerye thyng therein pondred and
tryed, thought my labour and paynes shoulde
not be euyll employed, ne vnthankfully accep-
ted and receaued of all honest, discrete and sage
women, yf I after good and diligent perusing
thereof, dyd correct and amende suche faultes in
it,

The Prologue.

it, as seemed worthe of the same, and to aduise the readers what thinges were good, or intollerable to be vsed, whiche were daungerous, and whiche were vtterlie to be exchued. The which thing I haue not onely so done, but ouer this, haue therevnto adioyned and annexed dyuers other more experimented and more famillier medicines. And farther haue in the fyfth booke set forth, and evidently declared, all the inward partes of women (suche as were necessarye to be knowen to our purpose) and that not onely in wordes, but also in liuely and expresse figures, by the whiche euery part before in the booke described, maye in maner be as exactly and clearely perceaued, as though ye were present at the cutting open of Anothomie of a dead woman.

Many thinges annexed & newly added to this booke. The contents of the first booke.

And thynke not the vtilitie and profite of this fyfth booke, and knowledge thereof to be litle or of small value, but take it as the foundation and ground, by the perceuerance whereof, your wittes and vnderstandyng shalbe illuminate and lyghtened, the better to vnderstande, howe euerye thyng cometh to passe within your bodies in tyme of conception, of bearyng, and of byrth. And farther, by the perfect knowledge of this booke, ye shall clearely perceau the reason of manye diseases whiche happen peculiarlye to women, and the causes thereof, by whiche perceuerance, agayne ye shall haue the readyer vnderstandyng howe to withstand & remedie the sayde infirmities or diseases. For note ye well, that as there is no man whatsoeuer he be, that

Howe profitable & first booke is.

The vtilitie of the perfect knowledge of Anothomie.

The prologue.

shall become an absolute and perfect Physitian, vnlesse he haue an absolute and perfect knowledge of all the inwardes and outwardes of mans and womans body: euen so shall ye neuer groundlye vnderstande the matters contayned in the seconde booke, or anye other communication, or writing, touchyng the same intent, except ye first haue true and iust cognoissauce in the fyrst booke. Agayne when that a woman commeth to a Physitian for counsell, concernyng somethyng that maye be amisse in the parte: the aunswere of the Physitian and reasonable allegation of causes to the same infirmitie, is manye tymes obscure, darke, and straunge, to be comprehended by the woman, for lacke of due knowledge of the situation, maner, and fashion of the inwardes. And truly when a person is sicke or diseased in anye part, it is halfe a comfort, yea halfe his health to vnderstand in what part the disease is, and howe that parte lyeth in the bodye. This knowledge also ministreth yet a farther ingin and policie to inuent infinitelye the better howe the medicine shoulde be applied, & after the most profitable sort ministred and set to the diseased plot. To be short, all the wittines and artificiall craftie inuention, and diuers maners of ministrations in the noble science of Physicke, procedeth and springeth of the profounde knowledge of Anothomie. Therefore mine aduise & vtter counsel is, that al women in whole handes this litle booke shall chaunce to come, with all diligence do force them selues perfectly to the vnderstandyng of this fyrst booke: well

The coun-
sayle of the
auctour to
the readers.

The Prologue.

well assuryng them that they shall not repent them of their small paynes bestowed in that behalfe. And to the ende that euery thing might be the playner and more easye to attayne vnto, I haue at the latter ende of the foresayd fyrst booke, set the figures whiche represent suche matters as were entreated of in the booke before, and also haue therto annexed a sufficient declaration and exposition by letters, of all partes and parcels conteyned in the sayde figures.

In the seconde booke we shall declare the diuers sortes and maners of the deliuerance or byrth of mankynde, and all the daungers, perils, and other cases happening to the labouryng woman at that season, with remedyes and manyfolde medicines concernyng the same, where also we haue not omitted ne left out anye medicine beyng fyrst in the olde booke, but haue in manye places rectified and amended the same, accordyng to reason and the lawes of phisicke: and besides this, haue added thereto diuers other salutarie and effectuell medicines, suche as eyther I my selfe or other Phisitions beyng yet alyue at this day, haue experimented and practised. Furthermore, in this seconde booke ye may finde diuers remedies whereby to prouoke the termes or flowres (when that needeth) or to restrayne or stoppe the same when they issue more largely then nature doth require, with many other matters, to long here to be rehearsed.

In the thirde booke shalbe entreated, of the election and choyse, by certayne signes and tokens

The contents
of the se-
cond booke.

Many true-
ly experi-
mented me-
dicines ad-
ded to this
booke.

Things
entreated of
in the thir-
d booke.

The prologue.

kens of a good Nurse, whiche maye foster and
bryng vp the chylde beyng borne . Item medi-
cines encreasynge, dimynyshynge, attenuatynge,
engrossynge, and amendynge the mylke in the
Nurses brestes . Also remedies for manye and
sundrye diseases, whiche oft tymes chaunce vnto
infantes after their byrth.

What is
conteyned
in the fourth
booke.

In the fourth and last booke, we wyll some-
what commune of conception, with the causes
hynderynge or fartherynge the same, shewynge
certayne counsaile and remedies whereby by
the grace of God the vnfruitefull maye be made
more fruitefull, and impedimentes of concepti-
on, by vertue of medicines, remoued and ouer-
come, the woman beyng made the more apt to
conceauie . And farther, in this last booke shall
be vttered and sette forth certayne embellesh-
ynge receptes, concernynge only honest & health-
some decoration and clenlynesse, alwayes moste
lowable and commendable in a woman, as to
scoure and clense the head, to cause the heere to
kepe his naturall colour, to preserue the heere
from fallynge away, to take away heere from
certayne places, where beyng it causeth some
deformitie or vnseemelynesse in a person, to
subtyle and cleare the skynne in the face or o-
ther where, to remoue and do awaye spottes,
freckens, and other suche lyke displeasaunt
markes and tokens, to souple and mollifie the
skynne beyng rugged and rough, with other
moe suche lyke matters, to long here to be re-
hearsed, the whiche truely are not of anye pru-
dent

The Prologue.

dent person to be reſected, improued, or diſpraiſed, forasmuche as I teache nothyng in that place, but that only whiche may make to the honeſt, comely, and commendable conſeruyng and maynteynyng of the inſet and naturall beautie in a woman, vtterly abhorryng and deſpyng all fardyng, paintyng, and counterſait caſt colours, whiche of ſome damnable and miſproude people be dayly vſed, ſuche as by all meanes poſſible ſeeke and ſearche moze the abominable and deuilliſh paynting & garish ſetting ſoozth of their mortall carkaſes (the better thereby to commend it vnto the eyes of fooliſhe & ſonde men) then by honeſt, ſober, debonayze, & gentle maners ſo to demeane their lyfe, that they may thereby rather obtayne the loue, amitie, and heartie perpetuall fauour firſt of God, & then of all honeſt, diſcrete, and godly wyſe men. Thus nowe to be ſhort, I haue in as compendious maner as the matter would ſuffer, ſet before your eyes the cheefe and principall contentes comprehended in this litle Agaynſt
paynting of
womens fa-
ces. volume. And now remayneth there nothyng els The bene-
uolencie of
the reader
required. but onely to require the beneuolent fauour and good acceptation of this my labour and paynes ſpent in the compiling of theſe foreſayde matters, praying, that as it hath ben to me paynefull in the compoſyng thereof, ſo it may be both pleaſaunt and fruitefull to all women (for whose ſake & only reſpect it is ſet ſoozth) in the readyng thereof. Howbeit, I am not ignorant ne vnſure that many there are, before whose ſyght this booke ſhall finde ſmall grace, and leſſe fauour.

The prologue.

Harde to
please man
iudgements

The maner
of Poets in
tymes past.

The diffi-
caltie to con-
cyle y good
wyl of per-
uert people.

So harde a thing it is to wryte or endite anye
matter whatsoeuer it be, that shoulde be able to
sustayne and abyde the variable iudgement, and
to obtayne or winne the constant loue and a-
lowaunce of euerye man, especiall ye yf it con-
teyne in it any noueltie or bñwont strangenes.
Therefore the auncient Poetes in tymes passed,
when that they enterprised anye new or straunge
wozkes, were wont in the frunt of the same,
with greate protestation, to inuocate and call
bpon all the goddes and goddeses by name, re-
quyring them fauourably to aspyre, ayde, and
prosper theyr attempted purpose, to the ende
that by theyr obteyned fauour, it myght be the
more acceptable and gracious to all suche as
shoulde it beholde and reade. Whose example
ryght necessary and needefull it were that I here
shoulde dzuoutly ensue and solowe, so that I
coulde first beleue that by suche maner of inuo-
cation, myght be allured and wonne the bene-
uolencie and wyllyng fauour of all suche in
whose handes this present booke shoulde happen
to fall. But truely I do suppose, that although
I shoulde call downe all the nine noble Muses
out of the famous mount of Hellicon, or praye
to be assistent the three loupng graces, or great
Apollo, god, maister, and cheefe inuentour of
the nature of all hearbes and other medicines:
or Esculapius cheefe patrone and president in
the worthye science of Phisicke: or wittie Mer-
curie with his doulce and sugred eloquencie,
with sweete Suada, goddessse of all periwasion,
with

The prologue.

with all other the goddes and goddesses what
euer they be, in whom ingenious Poetes do
saigne to be a maiestie, myght, and power, to
encline the heartes of men for to delyte and take
pleasure in any suche thyng whiche fyrst shalbe
by their godhead alowed and fauoured. Though
(I say) all these shoulde firmelye conspyre in one
together, and bende them vtterly to the mooste of
theyr hygh puissaunce, to sacre, halowe, yea and
with their holye poeticall spirite to breathe ouer
this booke, yet shoulde there be founde people
of so ingrate, straunge, peruers, and waywarde
wittes, that woulde (without all good reason) The lyght
iudgements
of many mā
blame and improue the same bnneth yet seene,
and muche lesse read. For who be they that geue
so precipitat and headye iudgementes in all ma-
ner of matters, as suche (for the more parte) the
whiche therein shall haue leaste cognoissaunce
or knowledge, and take least payne in reading
or searchyng the veritie of that thyng agaynste
the whiche they be mooste stoute, doughtie, and
bolde pronouncers. And this do I not say on-
lye of them, that peraduenture shall here and
there in the procelle of this booke fynde any
perticuler matters to reprove, and carpe, some-
tymes worthyllye, and sometymes otherwyle:
but also, yea, and that muche more of them, Of them
that vtterly
do cōdemne
this booke,
whiche generally without all exception, shall
condemne and vtterlye reprove all the whole
matter, some alleagyng that it is shame, and
other some, that it is not meete ne syttyng
suche

The prologue.

suche matters to be entreated of, so playnelye in our mother and bulgare language, to the dishonour (as they say) of womanhead, and the derision of their wont secretes, by the detection and discoueryng whereof, men it readyng or hearyng, shalbe moued thereby the more to abhorre and lothe the compayne of women, and farther, in their communications to ieste and bourde of womens priuities, not wont to be knownen of them, with diuers others uche like cauillations and reasons: so that their opinion it is, that it were more expedient and better to suppressse and vtterlye to condemne vnto darkenesse for euer this booke, then to sende it forth into lyght. Loe, suche is the lyght iudgement of them, the which in euery thyng, whereof may ensue both good and euyl, haue alwayes theyr eyes walkyng and firmlye affixed and directed vppon the euyl, pyckyng and choosyng out the worst of euery matter, omitting and leauyng to speake of the beste, as the thyng which were nothyng to their purpose. If euerye thyng in this worlde shoulde be wayed and passed vppon after this sort, then shoulde we be fayne to condemne and banyshe those thynges farre from vs, whiche are at this tyme accompted and taken for the most necessarie, worthie, and of greatest price or estimation: for to be short, there is nothyng vnder heauen so good, but that it maye be peruerted and turned to an euyl vse, by them that be euyl and naught them selues, and

Answer
to certayne
cauillations.

Nothing so
good but it
may be abu-
sed.

The prologue.

and do abuse it : ne is there any thyng so absolute and perfecte , but by the occasion of the abuse thereof, at one tyme or other, may and doth ensue great daunger and damage to mankynde. Fyre and water be two ryght necessary elementes to the vse of man , without the whiche we coulde not lyue : yet by the meanes of them, many a miserable deede hath ben done , and perpetrated . By fyre hath ben consumed and deuoured whole Cities and Countreys . By water, swallowed and drowned infinite men, shippes, yea and whole regions . Agayne, meate and drynke, to the moderate vsers thereof, doth minister and mayntayne lyfe : And contrary, to the vnmeasurable and vnfaciat gourmauntes and gluttons , it hath full many thousand times brought surfettes , sicknesse , and at the laste death . By weapons, Realmes and Cities be defended from the iniurie and violencie of theyr fierce enemies , the true wayfaryng man from the assault of the theefe : Yea and many tymes cleane contrary, by weapons Realmes and Cities be subuerted and vtterly destroyed, the true mans throte by the theefe cutte. The most holye and sacred Wyble teacheth nothyng but holynesse and vertuous lyuyng, charitie to God and to our neyghbour , reformation of our wicked lyuyng , and breefelye , the hye waye to GOD . The blessed Sacrament of the altar was instituted and ordeyned by our Saviour Iesus Christe , for a principall , earnest, lyuely , and moste presente consolation and comfort

Fyre & water abused.

Meate and drynke abused.

Weapons abused.

The Bible abused.

The blessed Sacrament may be abused.

The prologue.

and comfort of mans conscience, yet both holye Scripture, and also the foresayde holye Sacrament, haue ben, be, and wyll be, the confusion and condemnation of a greate number of the abusers and indigne or vnworthy receauers of them both. Shoulde men, for the auoydying all these foresayde inconueniences, and for the reasons abouesayde, condemne and bannyshe fyre and water, forsake their meate and drynke, suppress and forbyd all maner of weapons, abolish and set asyde the holye Scripture, denye or vnregarde the blessed Sacrament? No, it were but madnesse once to thinke it. Therefore I say, the iudgement of that eye can neuer be egall and indifferent, whiche hath more respect and regarde alwayes to the displeasures and hurtes possible to happen (onlye through the misuse of a thyng) then to the emolumentes and profites daylye and commonlye lyke to ensue to the welblers of the same, that that of it selfe is good, is neuer to be disallowed for the sake of them that do abuse it. For as the Apostle also doeth testifie: To them that be good them selfe, every thyng turneth to good, what euer it be is to them a sufficient matter and occasion therein to seeke the glorie of God, and the onlye profite of theyr euen Christen. And contrary, suche as be of yll disposition, in euerye thyng (be it neuer so good and salutarie) picketh out matter of maynteynaunce to theyr lewdenesse, turning matters of sadnesse and discretton, to foolyshe and pryuythe prating contention.

Wherefore

Whose
iudgements
can neuer
be indiffe-
rent.

To y good
every thyng
turneth to
good.

The condi-
tion of such
as be yll.

The prologue.

Wherefore consydering that there is nothyng in
this worlde so necessary, ne so good, holpe, or ver-
tuous, but that it maye by wickednesse be abu-
sed, it shalbe no great wonder though this li-
tle booke also, made, wrytten, and set foorth for a
good purpose, yet by lyght and lewde persons
be vsed contrary to godlynesse, honestie, or then-
tent of the wyter thereof. The abusion of this
booke (in my simple iudgement) consisteth on-
lye in these two poyntes. The one is, least that
some yll disposed person shoulde wickedly abuse
suche medicines as be here declared for a good
purpose, to some deuyllishe and lewde vse. What
I meane by the lewde vse of them, they that
haue vnderstandyng, ryght soone wyll perceaue.
The seconde poynt is, least that this booke hap-
penyng into any lyght marchauntes handes,
shoulde minister matters vnto suche, to deuyse
of these thynges at vnset and vnseemely tymes,
to the derision or ashaming of suche women as
shoulde be in presence. &c. To these reasons can I
make no better aunswere, then hath ben alled-
ged before. Notwithstandyng, yet I say that I
trust, yea, and do not doubt, but that this booke
shall be so discretely diuided abroad, that none
of them shall fall in any suche persons handling.

Wherein
this booke
may be a-
bused.

The second
poynt.

No light
persons shal
haue any of
these booke.

Agayne, yf any do chaunce to them, I am
sure they wyll as soone reade this Prologue,
as the rest of this booke, the which thing when
they shall do, here shall they heare of me, that
they be in theyr doynges neyther honest, good,
ne godly, but speakyng br:reuerently, contemp-
tuously,

The prologue.

Of foolishhe
and lewde
talkers.

Some wold
that neither
honest ne
vn honest
should haue
this booke.

tuously and vntymely of suche thinges, they do
great iniurie, dishonour, and contumelye to na-
ture: For he that declareth anye thyng in man
or woman, priuie or apart, talkyng and rehear-
sing it in reproche, derision, or confusion of his
euen Christen, can not be excused of mortall
and deadly sinne, for so muche as contumeli-
ously he ashameth and confoundeth his euen
Christen, wherewith he byngeth hym out of
paciencie, mouyng hym to yre, and vengeaunce,
in rehearsing of suche thinges, and after suche
sorte, as he knoweth shoulde agreeue and bere
his mynde: wherefore for suche deedes, he shal
not be accounted of the number of honeste and
sage persons, but of the lyght and lewde. Yet
another sorte is there, whiche woulde that nei-
ther honeste ne vn honeste men shoulde see this
booke, for because (as they saye) be a man neuer
so honest, yet by readyng heare of thinges to them
before vnknowen, they shall conceaue a cer-
tayne lothsomnes and abhorring towarde a
woman. To these I aunswere, that I knowe
nothyng in woman so priuie ne so secrete, that
they shoulde neede to care who knewe of it, nei-
ther is there any part in woman more to be ab-
horred, then in man. And yf the knowledge of
suche thynges whiche commonlye be called the
womans priuities, shoulde diminishe the hear-
tie loue and estimation of a woman in the
minde of man, then by this reason, Physitians
and Chyrurgians wyues shoulde greatly be ab-
horred and misbeloued of their husbandes. And I
my

The prologue.

my selfe lyke wyse, whiche wryteth this booke,
shoulde maruaylouslye aboute manye other ab-
horre or lothe women. But to be short, there
is no suche thyng, neither any cause therto why.
Wherefore all suche slender reasons set apart, let ^{no matter}
no woman be greeued who shall see or beholde ^{who reade}
this booke: for yf the partie be lewde, vnhappy ^{this booke,}
and knauishe that shall reade it, here I am sure
he shall learne neither lewdenes, vnhappynes,
ne knauerye. Howebeit, generally to all men, in
whose handes this booke shall chaunce to come,
I counsaile and exhorte, that they take not by ^{therhorta-}
pon them to talke of any thynges therein con- ^{tion to all}
tayned, but onlye where it may edifie, and be ^{readers.}
assuredly well accepted.

For women lightly wyll not gladlye heare of
suche matters, by anye man vnlesse it be a Phi-
sition of whom they require counsaile, or of
theyr discrete husbandes. It shall be no dis-
pleasure to anye honeste and louyng woman,
that her husbande shoulde reade suche thynges:
for manye men there be of so gentle and louyng
nature towarde their wyues, that they wyll be
more diligent and carefull to reade or seeke
out anye thyng that shoulde do theyr wyues
good, being in that case, then the women them-
selues. Briefly, I require all readers hereof, to
interpretate and consture euerye thyng herein
contayned, accordyng to the beste, and to vse
euerye thyng herein entreated of, to the pur-
pose wherefore it was wrytten. For truelye as
for

The prologue.

The consy-
deration
why this
booke was
set forth.

This booke
set forth in
many other
languages.

for my part consydering the manyfolde, daylye,
and imminent daungers and perilles the whiche
all maner of women of what estate or degree so
euer they be, in their labours do sustayne and
abyde, yea, many times with peryll of theyr lyfe
(of the whiche there be to many examples neede-
lesse here to be rehearsed) I thought it shoulde
be a verye charitable and laudable deede, and
ryght thankfully to be accepted of all honou-
rable and other honest matrones, yf by my
paynes this little treatise were made to speake
Englyshe, as it hath ben long syth taught to
speake Dutche, frenche, Spanyshe, and dyuers
other languages. In the whiche countreys
there be fewe women that can reade, but they
wyll haue one of these bookes alwayes in rea-
dynes, where also this and other suche bookes be
as commonly solde at euerye Stacionars shop,
as anye other booke. The same commoditie then
and profite whiche they in their regions do ob-
tayne by enioying of this litle booke in theyr
maternall language, may also ensue vnto all
women in this noble Realme of Englande, it
beyng lykwylse sette forth in our Englyshe
speache, so that to them whiche diligently wyll
aduert and geue heede to the instructions of
this litle booke, it may supplie the roome and
place of a good midwyfe, and aduysle them ma-
ny tymes of sundrye cases, chaunces, and reme-
dyes, wherein peraduenture ryght wylse wo-
men and good midwyfes shalbe full ignoraunt.
And

The prologue.

And truely (as I haue ben credibly enfourmed
by diuers persons worthye to be beleued) there
be syth the first setting forth of this booke, right
many honourable Ladies, and other worshipful
Gentyl women, whiche haue not disdayned the
oftener by the occasion of this booke, to fre-
quent and haunt women in theyr labours, ca-
rying with them this booke in theyr handes,
and causyng suche part of it as doth cheefely con-
cerne the same purpose, to be read before the
Mydwyfe, and the reste of the women then be-
yng present, whereby oft tymes, then all haue
ben put in remembraunce of that, wherewith
the labouryng woman hath ben greatly com-
forted, and alleuiated of her thronges and tra-
uayle: whose laudable example and doynges,
woulde GOD that many proude Mydwyues
woulde ensue and folowe, among the whiche,
as there be many ryght expert, diligent, wyse,
circumspect and tender about suche busynesse as
apperteyneth to theyr office: So be there a-
gayne many mo full vndiscrete, vnreasonable,
chorlithe, and farre to seeke in suche thynges, the
whiche shoulde cheefely helpe and succoure the
women in theyr mooste paynfull labour and
thronges, through whose rudenesse and rash-
nesse onely, I doubt not but that a great num-
ber of women in theyr labour speede worse then
needed otherwyse. But here now we let not the
good Mydwyues be offended with that, that is
spoken of the badde. For verily there is no sci-
ence, but that it hath his Apes, Owles, Beres,

How La-
dyes & gen-
til women
haue vsed
this booke.

Of Myd-
wyues.

In euery
science ther
be of all soz-
tes.

The prologue.

and Asses, whiche as aboue all other haue most neede of information and teaching, so most commonly agayne, more then any other, wyll they kyche and wyne agaynst suche as woulde them resourne or reduce to any better way then they haue ben accustomed to in tymes past. And this do I say, for because that at the fyrst comynge abroade of this present booke, many of this sort of Mydwyes, moued eyther of enuie, or els of mallice, or both, diligented and endeououred them very earnestly, by all wayes possible, to fynde the meanes to suppressle and abrogate the same, makynge all women of theyr acquaintaunce (whom they thought to haue any knowledge thereof) to beleue that it was nothyng worth, and that it shoulde be a flaunder to women, forsomuche as therein was descried and set forth the secretes and priuities of women, and that euery boye and knaue hadde of these bookes, reading them as openly as the tales of Robin hood. &c. The whiche sayinges, as they were false, and vntrue, and malitious allegations onely of euyl hearted persons, to whom it was great greefe, that any by readyng thereof, shoulde see or vnderstande more then they hadde knowledge of before: So is it very soothe and true, that ryght dyuers of the better and more sober sort, were thereof full fayne and glad, and berre desyrous to haue of them, and gaue faythfull counsell also vnto women of theyr familiar knowledge, to heare the booke read by some other, or els (suche as coulde) to reade it them

Some Myd-
wines
would haue
had this
booke so,
bidden.

The false
surmises of
the maleuo-
lent.

The good
Mydwines
wer glad of
this booke.

The prologue.

them selues. Whose honest and vertuous industry in that behalfe, as it doth merite and deserue the laude and prayse of all them that be laudable them selfe: euen so is the fylthye and byle ingratitude and dispituous enuye of the maleuolent, to be detested and vtterlye abhorred of all people: Whose malignaunt wittes, yf they myght preuayle of theyr purpose, woulde

Enuy and
vnthankful
nes to be
abhorred.

fley the good courages of all honest interpreters, in those matters and all other. And

thus I conclude and make an ende

of this rude Prologue, requir-

ring the gentle readers

therof, that yf they

shall fynde any

thing ther-

in inter-

pretable to diuers senses, to ac-

cept only that whiche may

make to the best, accor-

dyng to my mea-

nyng.

The first booke.

In this first Chapter is breiefely
declared the contentes of the
first booke.



Although that many thinges entreated of in this first booke, shal seeme vnto some not very necessary to the vnderstandyng of the seconde booke, yet then contrary do I ensure and certifie (as I haue sufficiently sayd in the Prologue) that the ignorant in the first, shalbe full blynde in the seconde, to the Whiche, the first is as a key, opening and clearing the matters to be intreated of in the seconde.

The vtilitie
of the fyrst
booke.

The con-
tentis of
this booke.

In this first booke then shalbe declared the fourme, maner, and situation of the inwarde partes of a woman, suche as are in them by nature dedicate and assigned to the propogation, conception, and bearyng of mankynde. In whō truely is the receptacle, & as ye woulde say, the campe or felde of mankynde to be engendred therein. And although that

that man be as principall mouer and cause of the generation: yet (no displeasure to men) the woman doth conferre and contribute muche more, What to the encrease of the chylde in her wombe, and what to the nourishment thereof after the byrth, then doth the man. And doubtlesse, yf a man woulde demaunde to whom the chylde oweth most his generation: He may worthily make aunswere, that to the mother, Whether ye regarde the paynes in bearyng, other els the conference of moste matter in begettyng.

The womā
conferreth
more the ge-
neratio then
man.

Furthermore, in this booke ye shall reade certaine thinges, which in tymes passed haue ben corruptly, negligently, yea and very falsely wrytten of, and of the whiche both men, yea and women them selues, haue conceaued very erroneous and misopinions, as ye shall farther perceaue in the processe.

Many thinges
falsly wrytten
in tymes
past.

Nowe therefore that we come to the declaration of the Organs generatiue in woman, it shalbe necessary to the bet-

The first Booke.

ter vnderstandyng thereof, fyrste to shewe the discription of certayne thynges, without whose knowledge, this treatyse Woulde be manye tymes the more obscure and darke.

In howe many coates the body is lapped or inuolued. Cap. ii.

The princ-
pall coates
of the body.



The body of man or woman is inuolued or compassed vniuersally with three principall coates. Of the whiche, the first and vttermoſt is called the skinne, in Latine Cutis, With Whom generally every part of the body is clad and inclosed, the whiche yet in some part is more softe, delicate, and thinne, then in some other, and in some one person more stowre & styffe, then in some other agayne, for causes needelesse here to be rehearsed.

The super-
ficial skinne

And ye shall note, that vpon the outward face and superficie of this skinne, there is yet another thinner skynne, in Latine

Latine commonly named Cuticula, & of
 some Efflorescentia cutis. This thinne skin
 is it, the which ye see ryse lyke a bladder
 when any part of the bodye is blistered
 with fyre or hot water, so that betwene
 this thinne skin and the very skinne, is
 contained the water which resorteth to
 the place by the violence of the fyre or
 heat, the which thin skin also we vse to
 pricke to let the water issue forth: also
 the same that skaleth or pylleth of the
 hands or other partes of the body being
 scabbed & begynnyng to drye. Item the
 skin that the Adders do cast in the som-
 mer time, is the foresaid thin superfici-
 all skin, & not the verye substantiall skyn
 of the body in deede. For the verye skyn
 neuer pylleth ne falleth of but by great
 violence, as by slaying, lyke as beastes be
 slayne at the butchers, & as they slay co-
 nies. And againe, the thin or superficiall
 skin, skale it or fal it of neuer so often, yet
 in the place of it is reingendred new, as
 good alwayes as the former. But if
 the second and very skin be perished, by

The verye
 skin skaleth
 not of.

The first booke.

The verye
skin peris-
hed, neuer
restored.

cutting or apostumation, or by other
casualtie, it wyl neuer be restored to his
olde perfection agayne, but shall shewe
allwayes in the place where it is, as it
were a seame, skarre, or marke, smothe
and harder then the other skynne, and
without naturall powers.

The second
coate.

The fleshye
skynne.

The seconde inuestiture or clothyng
of the body, is named the fleshye skin, in
Latin *Membrana carnofa*, so called, for be-
cause that it conteyneth and is compas-
sed of fleshyes, then any other kyll or
skin in all the bodie, & is, as it were, the
lynnyng to the foresaide *Cutis*, that is the
very skin immediatly aboue hym, the
very skin and it beyng both basted toge-
ther, by a great number of small fybres
or cordes enterlasing these two skynnes,
so that with great payne vnneth may
they be separated the one fro the other.
And farther, betwene these two skins
runne a great number of baynes, ar-
tires, and skynnes, in euery part of the
body, so that the great baynes whiche
appeare so manifestly to your syght in
the

the armes, temples, handes, legges, feete, and other places, runne betweene the proper skinne and the fleshy skinne, this beyng to them as a bedde, and that as a couerlet.

The thirde coate of the bodye, is the fatte, in Latine Adeps, the which doeth so generally in euery parte of the bodye inuolue and wrappe the same as the other two coates: but yet the man or woman beyng in any reasonable lykyng, it is founde in euery part (except fewe) as the forehead, the temples, the backes of the handes and feete, with certayne other places needelesse here to be resited, and doth entercurre and run betweene the two foresayde skinner, receauyng & embzasyng in it selfe the small bastynge fibres, the vaines, artires, and sinnes, which (as I sayd before) be deriued from the one skin to the other: And the greater foyson of fat that there is betweene the two skinner, the lesse be the baynes intercurring betweene them, conspicuous or sensible to the eye (thabundance
of

The thirde
coate, is the
fatte.

Store of fat
letteth the
shewe of the
baynes.

The first booke.

Fat in some
part, more
then some.

of fat drownyng & coueryng the great-
nes of them) the which also in the selfe
same place of a leaner oz sparer person,
shalbe seene very great, and as it were
swollen baynes, in comparison of the
fatter. Itē, vnderstande ye that in some
part of the body, naturally fatnes doth
abound much more then in other some,
as in the belly lyghtly the fatte is two
fingers thicke & more: and in women
that be meanely fat, in the thyes & buc-
tockes this fatte is of thre, yea foure
fyngers thycknes, which (as I sayde a-
boue) alwayes hath his place betweene
the foresayde two skynnes.

What is
contayned
next vnder
the fleshye
skynne.

Nowe immediatly vnder the fleshy
skyn, be contayned the Muscles of the
body, so that the inner face oz superficie
of the fleshy skin, wherwith it toucheth
the Muscles, is alwayes bedewed with
a certayne slimy moysture, by whiche
meanes the foresayde Muscles mouing
and styrryng vnder the said fleshy skyn,
be the freer, & haue the lesse impediment
oz let in theyr motion, & verye easie it is
to

to separate this skin from the Muskles.

Here is declared what the Muskles be. Cap. iiii.

The Muskles of mans body be called the mouyng cordes and fleshye strynges, whereby any member of the bodye is mooued to or fro, bpwarde or downeward, or turned rounde. As for example. If ye close, or otherwyle do moue either of your handes, and in closyng or mouyng it with the other hande do feeles the wreste of that hande, ye shall sensibly perceaue as it were certayne cordes mouyng vnder the skinne, the whiche be called Muskles, in Latin Musculi. To discusse curiously the nature or occasion of the name of Muskles, is not for this place. Here it is sufficient to vnderstand what is meant by the name. Yet note ye well, that wheresoeuer there is great store of Muskles, and cheefely in the myddle parte of them, there is also greate plentie of fleshe, enterlardyng

what is meant by the name of Muskles.

The first booke.

The Mus-
cles enter-
mingled
with fleshe.

lardying & entermynglyng it selfe With
the Muskles, & as it were conbyndyng,
colligatyng, or knyftyng together the
Muskles, not so yet, but that neuerthe-
lesse they haue theyr free motion.

All other places of the bodye lefte a-
part and vnmentioned of, here wyll I
onlye declare a litle of the Muskles of
the belly, forsomuch as theyr operation
is sometymes conferent and appertey-
nyng to the matters that we entend of.

The Mus-
cles of the
belly.

Ouer the amplitude of the bellye,
next vnder the fleshy kell or skyn, be.iiii.
Muskles, eche situate and sette vnder o-
ther, of the whiche, the vppermost im-
mediately touchyng the fleshy skyn, be
called the Byaswyse descendyng Mus-
cles, in Latin *Musculi obliqui descendentes*.
Of these Muskles there be two, in eche
syde of the belly one, so that these two
Byaswyse descendyng Muskles meete
together in the middle region of the bel-
lie, and be extended or spread ouer al the
amplitude of the belly, shapyng thereto
as it were another coate.

The

The seconde Muskles be named the byaswysse ascendyng Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi obliqui ascendentes*, whose being is immediatly next vnder the inner face of the first Muskles. Of these also as of the firste, in eche syde or coaste of the belly is there one.

The third sort of the belly Muskles, as they be situate in order, the one vnder the other, be called the ryght Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi recti*, which be double as the other two before. The ryght Muskles.

The fourth be nominated the ouerthwart Muskles, in Latin, *Musculi transuersi*, because they transuerse or ouerthwart the belly. In eche side likewise of whom, ther is one of these Muskles, which in the middle lyne of the belly encountre eche other, as I haue sayde of the aboue named thre Muskles, so that the byaswysse ascendyng, and the byaswysse descendyng with the ouerthwart Muskles, do eche of them couer and compasse all the whole breadth of the bellye, but so do not the ryght Muskles, The ouerthwart Muskles.

The first booke.

The vse of
the foure
belly Mus-
cles.

kles, for the breadth of them is but small in comparison of the other. All these foure Muskles be to the entrayles and bowels within the belly, as foure seuerall coates, by the vertue and helpe of Whom, together with the ayde of the midriffe, all expulsion both bpward and downewarde in the guttes, in the stomacke, in the matrix of the Woman in the tyme of labour, and also in the bladder in tyme of makying of Water, is wrought, and yet besydes this vtilitie, they clothe (as I haue sayde) defende, fortifie, and strength the inwardes of the bellye.

C Of the Kell, called Peritoneum. Capit.iiii.



nder the laste Muskle of the belly, called the ouerthwarte Muskle, immediatly succeedeth a certaine thin rime, kell, or skin, named in Latin, Peritoneum, Whiche compasseth rounde the amplitude and

The Peritoneum and
his office.

and largeour of the bellye, takyng his originall at the bynders of the loyne bones, and from thence dilatyng and spreading it selfe abroade, vnderlyneth the ouerthwart Muskles, the midriffe, & part of the short ribbes. To be short, this rime vnderlineth all the whole cavitie, holonesse, or amplitude of the bellye, from the midriffe to the flankes or share, immediatly contaynyng and inuoluing in it selfe all the whole contentes of the belly, euen as the skin next vnder the shell of an egge enuironeth and compasseth immediatly all the contayned meate of an egge. And as for Peritoneum, doth not onely inuolue all the entrayles of the belly in his compasse, but also yeeldeth vnto eche entrayle a coate and webbe of the cloth of his owne bodie, by the which his liuery, they be the more arctly & strayghtly affixed or fastened vnto him selfe, and farther in them selues the stronger within the cavitie of the belly: and vnder this Peritoneum, be contayned these bowels folowynge.

The vse & profit of the Peritoneum.

First

The first booke.

Botules co,
tayned in
der the Pe,
ritoneum.

First the stomacke, which is the first receptacle and receauer of the foode or meate chewed and mashed before in the mouth, from thence descendyng ouer the winde pype, downe along the stomacke gut, and so consequently into the stomacke, then the Kell, in Latin Omentum, the liuer, the splene or melt, the bladder, and the matrix, then yet the guttes, vnder the guttes the kydnees, the maister bayne, and the maister artire. But here we shal begyn fyrst to entreate of the matrix, as the part which maketh cheefely to our purpose.

The declaration of the names and nature of the Matrix.

Capit. v.

Dyuers
names of
the Matrix.

Here ye shall vnderstande, that these thre wordes, the Matrix, the Mother, and the wombe, do signifie but one thing, that is to say, The place wherein the seede of man is conceaued, fetified, conserued, nourished, & augmented, vnto the tyme of

of deliuerance, in Latine, named *uterus*
 & Matrix. The necke of this wombe, o^r
 therwyle called the womans priuie,
 we wyl call the wombe passage, o^r the
 priuie passage, in Latin *Ceruex vteri*, & *pu-*
dendum muliebre, the extreme end, o^r y^e first
 entraunce of this priuie o^r wombe pas-
 sage, ye shall name the passage port, for
 because that it is the port gate, o^r en-
 traunce of that passage, o^r way into the
 wombe o^r matrix, in Latin, *Vulua*, i. *vulua*.

The wombe passage then o^r the necke
 of the wombe, taketh his beginnyng at
 the passage port, and from thence sty-
 eth and mounteth ryght vpwarde vn-
 der the sharebone lyke a great conduct,
 varyng in length & breadyth acco^rding
 to the age of the woman.

To make especiall mention of the
 length of this wombe passage, were but
 folle, for the diuersitie thereof. Not-
 withstandyng in women it is esteemed
 of the length of .x.xi.xii. o^r xiii. fingers
 bredth, some more, some lesse. And this
 we may say, that nature hath so prouid-

The necke
 of the Ma-
 trix.

The first booke.

ded that it is of sufficient length, to receaue the priuie part of man, in the generation, directing the same towarde the Wombe porte, through the Whiche the seede is naturally sent from the man into the Wombe or mother, thereto helping an attractife power, Whiche is inset and geuen to the Wombe, to attract and drawe towarde it selfe the seede parted from the man (so that there be no other let.)

Of the wombe and his partes.

Cap. vi.



The head or vpper ende of this Wombe passage, is situate the Wombe it selfe, Whiche in Woman beyng not with childe is very lit-

The wombe
or matric in
women not
with chyld
contracted.

tle, contract and drawen together, so that the amplitude or largenes thereof, passeth not the amplitude and largenes of the priuie passage, the Whiche thynge to some may seeme vncredible, yet by Anothomie ye maye see it to be true.

And

And for all this contraction or drawing so nere together of the matrix, the outsyde of it is very smothe, moyst, glistering, and reddishe, as it were a litle redde tempered with a great deale of whyte, the insyde also of the matrix is smothe: yea, and though that the matrix (as we haue said) be full of riuels or wrinkles, by the reason that it is so contract, from a great amplitude or largenes (as may be seene in the wombe or matrix of women with chylde) to this litle compasse, yet maye a body scarce perceauie in this inner side any wrinkle, (albeit that there be infinite) they be so finely and nere drawen together.

This contraction of the matrix, no doubt was made by nature, for these causes, partlye that at suche tyme that the woman is not with chylde, it should occupie the lesse roome in the belly, but cheefely that in tyme of conception of the seede, the litle bolke or quantitie of the sayde seede, at his first conceauyng into the womans mother, may

The cause
of the con-
traction of
the matrix.

The first booke.

Howe the
matrix va-
rieth & thicke-
nes & thin-
nes of his
coate.

be touched rounde about euery Where
of the mother, and as ye woulde saye,
amplexed or embrased, and containned
(as the nut shell containeth immediat-
lye the nut) of the inner walles or face
of the matrix, and as the seede is diuifi-
ed, shaped, and doth encrease, so doth
the amplitude of the matrix enlarge
and waxe bygger, so that at the laste,
When the infant commeth to his full
groweth, or When the woman is great
With chylde, then this coate or kell of
the matrix is as thinne as a bladder,
Where that in tyme of his contraction,
or When the woman is not With childe,
the coate or wall of the matrix is as
good as halfe an inche thicke.

The founde
of the Ma-
trix.

Nowe ye shall vnderstande, that the
founde or bottome of the matrix is not
perfectly rounde bowllwyle, but rather
lyke the forme of a mans heart, as it is
paynted, sauing that the partition or
clifte in the matrix betweene both cor-
ners, the ryght and the lefte, is not so
profoundlye dented inwarde as the
clift

clyfte in the hearte : For in the inwarde
 vault , cavitie , or holonesse of the ma-
 trix , there is a certayne seame , whiche A certayne
seame deul-
dyng the
matrix as
it were in
two partes.
 begynnyng in the middle of the fore-
 part of the matrix , at the wombe port ,
 doth passe forth by that foresyde , & so by
 the bottome to the hynder syde of the
 matrix , & from thence along downe to
 the wombe port on the backsyde , as ye
 may more evidently see in the figure
 hereof. This seame then is as it were a
 litle separation , marke , or limitie , diui-
 dyng the wombe in two equall partes
 or sydes , the ryght and the lefte . In the ma-
trix but one
holonesse.
 Notwithstandyng , in the matrix there is
 but one vault , cavitie , holonesse , or am-
 plitude , the foresayde seame beyng but
 as it were a note , signe , or scace sensi-
 ble marke running along the sides and
 botome of the wombe . But this seame
 or line where it passeth the bottome of
 the mother or wombe , is more crasse ,
 thicke , and fleshlye , propendyng , hel-
 dyng , hangyng or lokyng downeward
 into the vaulte or amplitude of the

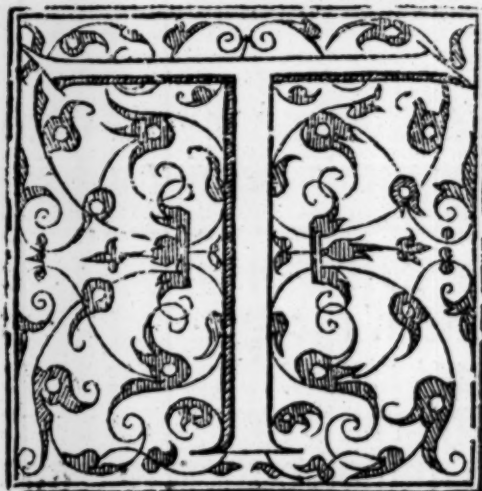
The first booke.

Certayne
erronious
opinions of
vii. selles in
the wombe.

Wombe, the Whiche line in the sides is
nothyng so manifeste ne sensible to be
perceaued. Thus ye may see, that the
myddle part of the bottome of the Ma-
trix, is not so hye as the two corners oz
angles on both sydes be. Other distinc-
tions oz seperations in the matrix is
there none, albeit that in tymes passed,
diuers Clarkes haue Written, & many
other haue beleued, that there shoulde
be seuen selles, oz seuen distinct places in
the matrix, in thzee of the Which on the
ryght side, shoulde onlye men chyldren
be conceaued, and in the other thzee on
the left syde Women chyldren, and yf it
chaunced that the seede were conceived
in the seuenth sell, Which was the myd-
delmoste, then that shoulde become a
monster, halfe a man & halfe a woman.
The Which al is but lyes, dreames, and
sonde fantasies. For the womans ma-
trix, as I haue sayd, is euen as a strong
bladder, hauing in it but one vniuersall
holoneffe, and the chyld when it lyeth
in it, lyeth euer on the one syde more
then

then on the other, the head beyng towardes one of the corners or angles, & not vpright toward the middle bridge.

Of the mother port. Cap. vi.



The entraunce of y^e matrix or Womb, is named y^e Womb porte or mother port, the which in substance & fashion, muche doeth resemble

Of the mother porte, & the situatio thereof.

y^e fourme of an haukes bel, or other litle moyses bels, sauing that it is much bigger, hauing a clift ouerthwart the body therof, as ye may more plainly perceiue by y^e figure hereof. And this port of the matrix is of substance more thicke and crasse then the rest of the same, & as it were a kernell rounde & clift in the midst. This Womb-port also is fastened & affixed to the vpper ende of the Wombe passage, as all the rest of the Wombe is.

D iij How

The first booke.

Howe be it, the middle parte of the Wombe port oz the snōwt therof, where it bosseth downeward, doth touche no side nor part of the Wombe passage, but onely heldeth pendande wyse, oz loketh downewarde: and where as at suche tyme that the man companyeth with the woman, the priue passage is dilated & opened to the quantitie of mans priue part, yet notwithstanding, the mouth of the clift of the Wombe port is not moued thereby ne dilated: excepte that it be at suche tyme that the matrix beyng apt and disposed thereto, and other conditions requisite, this Wombe port do naturallye open it selfe, attractyng, drawyng, and suckyng into the Wombe the seede, by a vehement and naturall desyre.

The wombe
wel disposed
naturallye
attracteth
the seede.

Notwithstanding, when the seede is conceaued in at this Wombe port, it doth not alwayes remayne there, but manye tymes issueth out agayne for some indisposition founde other in the place oz in the seede it self. Albeit yf the seede be retay-

retayned styll in the matrix, then doeth the wombe port close it selfe so fast and so firmly, that the poynt of a nedle can not enter in thereat Without violence, and so doth remayne vntyll the tyme of deliuerance, at what tyme agayne it dilateth and openeth it self, in such amplitude and largenesse, that it is wonderfull to speake of.

The closenes of the matrix after the seede conceaued,

Of the vessels of seede, called the stones, with other therto appertayning.

Cap. viii.



In eche syde of the matrix lieth a stone, which both be called the womans stones, wherin is engendred the seede & sparme that cometh from the woman, not so stronge, firme, and mightie in operation as the seede of man, but rather weake, fluy, colde, and moyste, and of no great firmitie: howbeit, as conuenient and proper for the purpose for the whiche it was ordeyned, as the seede of man for his

The first booke.

his purpose. These stones be nothing so bygge as the stones of man, but lesse, flatter, much fassyoned after the shape of a great and brode almonde. The substance and bodye of these stones is not made massyfe, or compact and softe as mens stones be, but as it were many litle kernelles sette together, betweene the which is much holoness, and therein conteyned a certayne thinne watery substance. This substance of the stones is inuolued & wrapped with a coate or thinne skinne, very firmly annexed to the foresayde substance, which also doth receaue into hym selfe the seede byngers. We may name the same coate in Latine *Supergeminalis*.

Of the seede
byngers.

Of the seede byngers. Cap. ix.



The seede bringers, called in Latin *Vasa semē adferentia*, be two baynes & two artires, whiche come to these two stones, to eche one bayne and one artire, and take theyr begynnyng

nyng on this wyse.

Under the guttes (as ye may see in the figures hereof) be situate the greates maister bayne, in Latin *Cava vena*, and the great artire, *Arteria magna*. The maister bayne hath his originall of the lyuer, from whence it descendeth downeward along the loynes, vntyll it attayne vnto the begynnyng of *Os sacrum*, where the artire (as the woorthyer) begynneth to mount vpon the maister bayne, and in this place they both diuide them selues in two partes forke wyse, the ryght part of the forke proceeding into the ryght thygh & legge, the lefte, into the left legge, the bayne euermore associate with the artire, the which hath his beginning of the heart, from whence he is descended through the mydryffe to this place, distributing to all places whereby he passeth artires.

The originall of the great bayne

The office of the greates bayne is, to conduct and cary from the liuer (which is the blood shoppe, where the blood is engendred

The office of the baynes

The first booke.

engendred) to all partes of the bodye blood, therewith to nozyshe them. For to the greate vayne where they passe, there commeth innumerable smal vaines on euery syde, euen as to the great ryuers many small streames on euerye syde do resort.

The office
of the ar-
tires.

The office of the artires is, to spreade abroad in the body the vitall and lyue-lye spirite, engendred in the bosome of the hearte, and to refreshe and temper the immoderate heate whiche other- wyse mought be engendred in the bodye, the whiche also sleepe we or wake we, do continuallye moue and beate, therefore the motion of them is called the pulce, and loke after what maner the heart (whiche is the well of these artires) doeth moue or stirre it selfe, and euen so do they.

The heart
and artires
haue two
contrary
motions.

The heart then and the artires thorow him, haue two contrary motions: one is, in closyng it selfe, and the other, in dilatyng and openyng of it selfe, whiche sorte of mouynges we call the beating

beating of the pulces, When the artires do open them selues, then they attract, drawe, or sucke in fresh ayre, to temper the heate of the body withall, and also spirituall and thinne pure blood. But when they close them selfe, then do they expel mistie fumes, and hoate breathes, or vnnaturall vapours, suche as of necessitie alwayes be engendred in al partes of the bodye, by the whiche blood doth passe, for causes to long here to be alledged, neither is there anye notable vayne vnassociate of an artyre.

Nowe on the ryght side and forepart of the great vaine proceadeth a braunch, deriued from that place a longe the loynes downwarde to the head of the ryght stone, from the ryght syde lyke wyse and foresace of the great artyre, descendeth a braunche thwarting ouer the great vayne downe towarde the ryght loynes, wher it meeting with the foresayde vayne braunche, before they emplant them selfe in the head of the stone, become both as one bodye, here
straight

The meeting
of the vayne
and artire.

The first booke.

straight enlarging them selfe, litle and litle stepelwyle, not fully rounde, but flattishe before and behinde, With the broder ende planting & infixing themselfe into the head of the ryght stone.

And at the vpper and smaller ende, Where this bayne braunche and artyeze braunche do first meete, they beginne to entermingle, enbrayde, and enterlade eche other in suche infinite wyle, wrythyng and diuidyng them selues in thousande of litle braunches, as it were heeres of the head, the one embracing, compassing, and ouerthwarting the other so confusedly, that no wit can expresse the ryght maner and order of their commixtion. Call this parte then in English, the bradid body, in Latin *Varicosū formemplexum*, whose nether & broder ende, as I sayde before, affixed and implanted in the vpper head of the ryght stone, sendeth forth braunches and armes into the bodye of the same stone, manyfoldwyle dispersed, spread, and commixt.

The bradid
body.

And

And also into the skinn or coner of the stone, called before ^{Supergeminalis}, from the saide bradid body, be there deriued manye small braunches, muche lyke vnto the litle small baynes whiche ye see reddishe in a mans eye.

And looke what discription and pro-
cesse we haue made of the ryght syde
seede bringers to the ryght stone, euen
the same vnderstand of the left side seede
bryngers to the left stone, sauyng that
the bayne braunche whiche comieth
to the left stone, most commonly taketh
his originall of the nether syde of the
left kydney bayne, and not immediatly
of the great bayne as the other.

And ye shall vnderstand agayne, that
from the foresaid bayne & artyze of eche
side, at the place where they first con-
iunction or meeting is, proceedeth a cer-
tayne braunche of the bayne, assosiate
with the artyze, which both passe forth
together to the found or bottome of the
mother or matrix, of that syde where
they stande, there delatyng and sprea-
dyng

Waynes de-
riued to the
bottome of
the matrix.

The first booke.

dyng them selfe abroade in manyfolde
smaller braunches, to the nourishment
of the body of the matrix.

Of the office and vse of these seede bryngers. Capit. r.

The seede
procreate of
the bayne
blood and
the artiriall
blood.

Through these seede bryngers,
blood out of the baynes, and
liuely spirite out of the artires
be deriued, yea, or rather (to
speake more properlye) attract or dra-
wen into the stones, there by vertue and
naturall instinctiō of the place altered
and chaunged, beyng fyrst confused to-
gether the blood and the spirite, by mu-
tuall amplexations or embracements
of these two vesselles, the bayne and
the artyze beyng conioyned and vnite
in one very body, first beginning in the
bradid body, & then after in the whole
bodye of the stone: So that thorow
the manyfolde and infinite circulati-
ons of the attracted matter by the con-
duictes or baynes infinitelye intricate
and

and Wrythed With a thousande reuolu-
tions oz turagaynes (and all in the lit-
tle compasse of the bodye of the stones)
the blood and spirite commixed toge-
ther, getteth another nature and pro-
pertie both in colour and effect.

And here ye shall vnderstande, that pote the en-
gin and po-
licie of na-
ture.
moſte commonly alwayes When that
nature is diſpoſed to make a tranſmu-
tation of any matter, that can ſhe not
do, vnleſſe ſhe haue a mine, ſhoppe, oz
workehouſe, wherein by continuall cir-
culatiō of the matter tranſmutable, ſhe
may bryng her purpoſe to paſſe: Euen
as mettalles and other minerals of the
earth, haue theyr ſcrete and vniſible
baynes, in whiche by daylye and long
coagitation, mouyng, circulation, and
hurling together, they be brought from
one forme to another, & made metals
of that the which befoze was none.

Of theſe ſort of mines, there be foure Foure
mines in
mans body.
principall in the body of man.
The firſt is the mine of blood, which is
the lyuer, in whom the iuyce of meate,

The first booke.

before of colour whyte, is transmuted into red, made apt and fitte to nouryshe all partes of the bodye, attract and drawen out of the stomacke and guttes, thoroowe verrye small and infinite litle baynes into the lyuer.

The heart
is the second
myne.

The seconde myne is the heart, which of the blood attract and drawen from the great maister bayne, proceeding out of the foresayde lyuer, into his parlours, doth engender vehement and liuely spirite, comixed with depured and greatly eleborated blood, within the selles of the heart, from thence sent forth thoroowe the artyes, into all partes of the body, beyng in colour yealowishe, thyn and hotte blood.

The brayne
the thirde
myne.

The thynde myne is the brayne, of whom all the sinewes take theyr originall. In whom the Wittie spirite, the spirites of mouyng, and the spirites of al sensibilitie be engendred, and thoroowe the sinewes sent to all partes of the bodye. For all suche partes as moue and feele, haue that by reason of sinewes derived

riued vnto those places from the head.

The fourth mine is the stones in whō The fourth mine is the stones.
by cōmixture of all the other three foresaid metalles of the body, that is to say, bayne blood, arteriall blood, and lyuely spirites engendred in the head, is engendred & produced seede, whiche bestowed in his due place, becommeth lyke a perfection to the creature from whence it came, that is to say, of mankinde, man.

But ye shall vnderstande, that the receauyng of the seede into the stones, is Howe the seede is receaued into the stones.
not that there shoulde be any one onely caue, holownesse, sell, vaulte, oz parler in the bodye of the stone, wherein it myght be receaued and retayned, lyke as the holownesse of an egge, the meate beyng out of it, oz of an hasell nutte, the kernell out of it, but farre otherwyle: for the stones (chefely in man more then in woman) be massife, not hard, but delicate and softe, as a softe kirknell, full of small & almost vnsensible white vaines, reuoluing them selfe in and out a thousand folde, and manyfold wise intricate

The first booke.

Howe the
colour of
the seede is
transmuted.

together, Within the Which the seede is
conueyed, caryed, concocted, or digested
and altred, by vertue of the White flesh,
Whiche intercurrenth and interminglith
it self euery Where betwene the foresaid
bayne, lyke as the earth doth inter-
curre and intermingle it selfe betwene
and among the small fibres, bearded, or
heares of rootes: the Whyte coate al-
so or Walles of the said baynes, helping
not a lytle to the transmutation of the
colour from red to Whyte.

Liquid thin-
ges sauou-
reth of the
nature of
the vessels
thorow
whiche it
runneth.

For euery thing that is liquid, as the
seede is, receaueth alwayes a nature of
the place, mine, or conduite, by Whiche it
runneth and passeth, so that When the
conduite is very small and narrowe, and
long withall, then the liquour that pas-
seth through it, receaueth and sauou-
reth so muche the more the nature and
condition of that vessel or conduite. As
for an example: If there were a conduit
or pipe made of lead, whose length were
ten foote, and the inner compasse, holo-
nesse, or cauitie of the same, but so much
that

that an heere myght passe through it :
 then say I, that a gallō oz quart of wa-
 ter passing and thrillyng through that
 narrow conduite shoulde sauour much
 more of the nature and qualitie of lead,
 then though the holownesse of the a-
 foresayde conduite, beyng styll of the
 abouenamed length, were so large that
 a bowle might enter and passe thorow
 the same. For this reason, that when
 the water hath to passe thorow so na-
 row passage, it maketh the longer iour-
 ney, and yeeldeth the smaller threade oz
 streene, and therfore is touched more im-
 mediately and intyely of the insydes oz
 inner walles of the conduite. And fur-
 ther, Well ye wote that a lytle quanti-
 tie is sooner ouercome & altered, then a
 great. As a spooneful of wine standyng
 all nyght in a pewter oz brasen pot, shall
 sauour muche more of the pottle, then a
 pynte of the same. Lykewyle, yf a man
 woulde coole hoate drynke by pouring
 of it out of one pot oz cup into another,
 sooner and more perfectly shall the cir-

A litle quan-
 titie sooner
 ouercome
 then a grea-
 ter.

The first Booke.

The policie
of nature.

instant colde ayre alter and coole it,
beyng poured out very softly, making
therof a fine and small streene, then y^e he
dyd the same hastily. And truly this
engine and pollicie doth nature vse in
euery part where she causeth any nota-
ble transmutation, making the matter
transmutable to passe through longe
strayghtes & narrow turagayne lanes,
the matter bowyng, enclinyng, and
apting it selfe alwayes to the dispositi-
on and nature of the vesselles thoro^we
which it cooleth or runneth, so that the
sparme or seede of man or woman, being
attracted by the foresaid seede bryngers
into the stones, passeth by many narrow
strayghtes, which beyng before bayne
blood and artire blood, by vertue of the
places through whiche it had to passe,
becommeth from red colour to whyte,
& of much more perfection then it was
before. For this transmutation of blood
into sparme, is not only in colours, but
also in properties and absolute perfecti-
on. What greater wonder or miracle is
there,

The trans-
mutation of
blood into
sparme.

there, wherein we may knowledge and beholde the omnipotencie of God, then to consyder howe that of the meate and drynke whiche we dayly do eate, by digestiō first of the stomacke, the fine iuice therof is separated from the drosse and grosser part: & then after at the seconde hande, the foresayde iuice passyng thorow the guttes, attract and drawen into the lyuer thoroowe infinite smal baynes, there transmutated into blood, from the lyuer sent into the great maister bayne, from the which the heart drawyng part, transmuteth certayne thereof into Actire blood. Agayne, the stones drawyng other part, maketh thereof & of the actire blood, whorled, circulate, and coagitate together, sparne: whiche sparne bestowed and conceaued where it shoulde be, becommeth mankynde.

Howe meate
and drynke
is transmutated
into blood.

This foresaide seede, as we saide before, is nothing so firme, perfect, absolute and mightie in woman as in man, & yet can you not call this any imperfection or lack in womā: for the womā in her

The seede
in woman,
not so firme
as in man,

The first booke.

kinde, and for the office & purpose wherefore she was made, is euen as absolute and perfect as man in his kynd, neyther is woman to be called (as some do) vnperfecter then man (for because that man is more myghtier and strong, the woman weaker & more feeble.) For by this reason, the horse, the Lion, the Dolphin, Camell, & many other beastes, should be called more perfect then man, to the whiche man is not able to compare in naturall myght and strength.

But truely, compar yng one man to another, suche as be gelded and want the genitozies, be much feeblar, weake, & effeminate, the other: in boyce woman lyke, in gesture and condition nice, in softnes of skyn and plumpnes of the body fatter and rounder, in strength and force impotent, nothing manly ne bold, the whiche imbecilitie in them, maye wel be named imperfection. For imperfection is, whē that any perticuler creature doth lacke any propertie, instrument, or qualitie whiche commonly by nature

Who be vnperfecter the one then the other.

nature is in all other, or the more part of that kynde, comparyng it to other of the same kinde, & not of another kynde.

Thus we haue sufficiently talked of the seede bryngers & stones, with theyr offices. Nowe shall I declare what becometh of the seede being thus engendred, and whyther it is conueyed.

C Of the way by the which the seede is sent from the stones to the angles and corners of the Matrix. Cap. xi.



At the lower end & foote or base of the braded body, wher it is infixed & planted into the head of the stone, on the backe syde halfe of the stone there is the begynnynge of another vessel, which may be called the seede caryer, in Latine Vas semen deferens, whose body is whyte and hardishe, like an harde sinewe. And from that part Of the seede caryers. where it taketh his begynnynge, it passeth

The first booke.

seth downewardes to the syde of the stone, hoopyng and compassyng along the syde therof (as ye may more expressely perceane in the figure hereof) tyll it come to the lower ende or base of the stone, from thence agayne resting or remountyng bpwarde, creepyng along the other syde of the same stone, tyll it come and attayne in maner to the myddle region of the stone on that side, al the way as it creepeth, firmly fastned and affixed to the body of the stones, as the eye braunches do fasten them selues to the walles, by whiche they creepe.

The bellye and inner syde of the foresaide seede carier, wherby it cleaueth to the outsyde or face of the stone, beyng flattysh, the backe or outer syde therof roundyshe and smothe. From the begynnyng & head of this vessell, to this later ende in maner of equall corpulencie or bygnesse, but infinitely wreathed as an adder or yeele when the slide fast or hastylpe, make of theyr long bodyes many halfe hoopes, halfe circles, or wreathes

Wreathes nere ioyned together: howe-
be it, these Wreathes be not so frequent
and thicke in the woman as in the man.
Therefore this part of the seede carry-
ers may be called the worme, in Latin.
Corpus lumbricosū, for because that it hath
many conuolutions, as wormes lying
together haue.

Of the part
called the
worme.

And yf ye be disposed to separate this
fozenained Worme from the face of the
stone With a sharpe knyfe, ye shall per-
ceauē no maner of holonessē or cauitie
of bayne or other cōduite: but as it were
a ruggednessē, by reason of separation
from the partie to Whom it was before
so suredly annexed. And yet no doubt,
there is verily in it cauitie and hollow-
nessē, by and thoroꝝ the whiche seede
is caried into the angles of the Matric.
Nowe then When this foresayde Wor-
mye body hath attayned to the myddle
region (as it were) of the stone, it begyn-
neth to depart from the bodye of the
stone, and is no more (as it was before)
thicke

The first Booke.

thicke wreathed, but playne, smothe, & rounde lyke a rounde linebe, With an vn sensible holonesse, departyng frō the stone along the insyde of the belly, ouerthwartyng the guttes, to the angle or corner of the Matrix, on the ryght syde thereof (yf it proccede from the ryght stone) and on the left syde (if it come frō the left stone) and that not strayght or forthryght, but somewhat bowyng & crookyng it selfe in two or thre crookes by the way. These seede caryers receaue the seede conficted, concocted, and digested in the stones and foresayd seede byngers, conueying and directyng the same from the stones to the insyde of the corners of the Matrix, so that they whiche do open dead Women, shall alwayes perceaue in the holownes of the Matrix, these two angles or corners specially bedeawed or imbued with a whyte slymye and thynne cleare matter, whiche no doubt is the womans seede. And in Women hauyng greate
and

& feruent desire to any man, this seede doth issue from this foresayde place, doſſne along to the womans priuie paſſage, moiſtring all that part, as it were with a deawe. Aristotle and other mo, do ſuppoſe that this ſeede in woman, ſerueth for no other purpoſe, but onely to recite, moue, and ſtirre the woman to pleaſure. But ſome peraduenture would thinke that this were but a ſimple & an ydle or ſlender purpoſe, whiche if thei did moze nerely conſider the matter, ſhould perceauē it to be a juſt, great, and neceſſary cauſe. For if that the god of nature had not inſtincted, and inſet The prickes of nature. in the body of man and woman, ſuch a vehement and ardent appetite and luſt, the one lawfully to companye with the other, neyther man ne woman would neuer haue ben ſo attentife to the woꝝkes of generation and encreaſement of poſteritie, to the vtter decaye in ſhozte tyme of al mankynde. For ye ſhal heare ſome women in tyme of theyꝝ trauayle, moued through great payne and intolerable

The first booke.

No ioy with
out some so-
rowe.

terable anguiste, forswear and bowe
them selfe, neuer to companye with a
man agayne, yet after that the panges
be passed, within short whyle, for entyre
loue to theyr husbandes, and singular
naturall delyte betweene man and wo-
man, they forget both the sorow passed,
and that that is to come. Suche be the
pruie workes of God, and suche be the
prickes of nature, which neuer createth
no speciall pleasure vnaccompanied
with some sorowe, neyther is there for
the moste part any sorowe, but that it
hath annexed some ioy or comfort, lesse
or more, to alleuiate and lyghten the
burthen and weyght of displeasure.

¶ Here is declared the situation of the
bladder in women.

Cap. xii.



¶ We for the vicinite and
neighbourhood that is be-
tweene the pruie passage
and the bladder, here I
will declare a lytle the na-
ture of the bladder.

The

The bladder in woman is assituate and set vppon the forepart of the Vter, whose necke is annexed, fastened, & vnite within the priue passage, vppon the forepart therof, as ye may see in the figure hereof, so that it is very harde to separate the one from the other. This necke of the bladder in women is much shorter then in men, the which necke is enuironed and compassed with a Muskle, called the bladder Muskle, as it were with a brode and flat hoope ryng, firming and clasping the vrine passage in such wise, that no vrine can issue out of the bladder, tyll such tyme that this Muskle do open it selfe, & licence it thereto: which thing cometh to passe, other when the bladder is ouercharged with vrine, or els that the vrine, although that it be but lytle in quantitie, yet haue some Colericke qualitie with it, whiche for the sharpenesse and eager nesse of the qualitie pryckynge and tycklyng the Muskle, causeth it to open it selfe many tymes for lytle quantitie. &c.

The Mus-
cle of the
bladder.

Howe the
bladder
Muskle is
forced to
open it selfe

The

The first booke.

The descrip-
tion of the
bladder.

The body of the bladder is rounde, into the which a lytle aboue the necke thereof, entreth the seconde brine conduites, deriued from eche kidney one.

And here ye must first vnderstande, that on eche syde of the great master bayne, and lyke wyse of the Artyze, is situate a kidney, in Latin called *Ren*. And to euery of them from the sayde great bayne and great Artyze, is there deriued a braunche of the bayne, and another of the Artyze, by the which braunches the kydneyes do attract and drawe blood vnto them, the which so drawen, they do (by theyr natie office) separate and diuide from the watery part, sending forth the water, other wyse called brine, downe to the bladder, through the brine baynes, or conduites.

Of the stone
engendred
in the backe

In these kidneyes is there many times in a great number of people, engendred the grauell or stone, which is called the stone in the backe, the which when it is broken, eyther of it selfe, or els by vertue of medicines, the grauell, rubbell, or peeces

peeces therof, descende from the raynes
oꝛ kidnees into the bladder, by the fore-
named vryne conduites, and so from the
bladder out at the yarde, Where, yf the
peeces be rockie oꝛ bigge, it causeth to
the partie in the voydyng of them, vn-
tollerable paynes and tozment. And
note that for the moste part, the ryght
kydney euermore standeth hyer then
the lefte.

Nowe agayne ye shall vnderstande The vryne
once entred
into y^e blad-
der, can not
reuert.
that when the vryne, pisse, oꝛ water is
once entred through the foresayde vryne
conduites, into the bladder, it can not
returne bywarde agayne the way that
it came (were the bladder neuer so ful)
for because that where as the said vryne
conduites do enter into the bladder, in
the inner face of y^e bladder, there be set
befoze the mouth oꝛ gull of the condui-
tes, certayne litle skinnie flappes, which
suffer any thing to enter in, but when
it is once entred, these skinnie flappes
close the passage, and defende, that no
thyng can rebounde, ne reflue backe a-
gayne,

The first booke.

gayne, euen as it is in a payre of bellows, which haue euer a great hole on the one syde thereof, to let into the bellows great store of Wynde or ayre at once, but when the bellows is full of Wynde, yf ye stop the nose thereof with somewhat, there wyll none thereof returne agayne out by that waye, the flappes of leather crossing and defending the passage: yea, the more vehemently and the harder that ye presse both sydes of the bellows together, the faster and more stifly doth the flaps stop the waye, and cleaue to the bordes of the bellows, the violence and force of the Wynde closing and stopping his owne way, so that the bellows would sooner breake, then that the ayre should come out there. And euen so it is in the bladder, sauing that the sayde skinnie flappes of the bladder, be more craftily, properly, and artificially wrought, then any man can deuise.

When there is then anye notable quantitie or qualitie of the vyne, gathered

thered together in the bladder, the bladder Muskle naturally doth open it selfe, and letteth it forth, passyng thorough the priuie passage on the forepart thereof.

In this bladder also as in the raynes, The stone engendred in the bladder. is there in manye people engendred the stone, Whereof commonly ensueth the strangury, dissury, With other diseases. The stone engendred in this place, yf it be of any notable quantitie, is verye harde or rather vnpossible to be dissolved, or cured without insition and cutting out. But Women be not so prone ne apt to engender the stone in the bladder as men be, because the necke of their bladder is shorter and larger, howbeit notwithstanding, dyuers of them be herewith greuously encombred.

Of the baynes which resort to the matrix and the partes thereof.

Item of the termes & their course with the causes thereof. Cap. xiii.

If ij

In

The first booke.

Inasmuch as the absolute vnderstandyng of the nature of the termes in women, can not wel be perceiued, except first it be knowē what vaines, how many, from whence, & after what sort they do attayne to the matrix: therfore first I will entreate of them, & then cōsequently of the termes.

Three notable
vaynes
resorting to
the matrix.

Vaynes then notable, which may be perceaued by Anothomie to reach from seuerall partes of the great ^{Vena caua}, or maister bayne, to the matrix and the partes therof, be thre, to whom for the more cleare, distinct, and euident doctrine sake, I wil geue thre distinct and diuers names. The first shalbe named the bottome vaines of the matrix. The second, the necke baynes of the matrix. The thyrde, the share baynes.

The bot-
tome vaines
of the ma-
trix.

The bottome baynes be they, which proceade and take their begynnyng at the seede bzynger baynes, from whence they attayne to the bottome or founde of the matrix, there dilating them-
selfe

selfe brode in manyfolde small flippes,
nouryshyng the bodye of the matrix, as
hath ben sayde alredye in the ende of
the .ix. Chapter.

As touchyng the necke baynes of the
matrix, ye shall vnderstande that in the The necke
baynes.
foresaid .ix. chapter, I shewed you how
that the great maister bayne, and the
great artire associate together, when
they attayne about Os sacrum, they begin
to diuide them selues in two partes
forkwysse, of the whiche the ryght (& so
likewysse the left) part of the forke is re-
diuided in other two partes forkwysse
also, wherof the vppermoste and grea-
test bayne passeth downe along tyll it
come to the hockle bone, ouer whom it
proceedeth into the vtter parte of the
thygh, & so along downe to the legges
and feete. The innermost and lefte or
smaller part or bayne of this seconde di-
uision, where it parteth from the vpper-
moste, passeth downe along vntyll
it come to the great hole whiche is al-
wayes in þ share bone, through whiche

The first ~~de~~ ^{part}.

Of the neck
baynes of
the matrix.

it entereth into the inner parte of the thygh or flanke. But by the way, or it attayne the sayd hole of the sharebone, it sendeth forth diuers slippes and smal braunches in the necke of the matrix, and the nether parte of the body of the matrix, and also to the bladder, as ye may more clerely see in y^e figure hereof.

The share
baynes.

The share baynes take their begynnyng at the insyde of the aboue named vppermost and greatest bayne, euen at the place where it beginneth to passe ouer y^e hockle bone, frō whence this slip is deriued oneche side, that is, both the ryght and the lefte, vnto the middle of the sharebone, where in men it sendeth forth braunches into the skinne that couereth the priue parte and the coddes, & also the ^{Perineum}, whiche is the place that is betweene the fundement and the yard. In women this vaine where it attayneth the middle parte of the sharebone, it deriueth and spreadeth it selfe into the lappes, sydes, or extreme ende of the priue passage, and also in
the

the sayde perineum. And this shall suffice
for the declaration of the baynes whi-
che resort to the matrix and her partes,
saue that ye muste vnderstande, that
loke what order or procession of baynes
commeth to the matrix from the ryght
syde, the same selfe order is lykelwyse
in the lefte syde: and agayne, that
none of these baynes runne to the ma-
trix or otherwhere, vnassociate of an
artire.

Nowe to come to the declaration of
the nature of termes: ye shal vnderstand
that they be called in Latin *Menstrua*, so,
because that once in a moneth they hap-
pen alwayes to womankind after .xiii
or .xv. yerres of age passed (beyng in
their perfect health) In Englishe they
be named *Termes*, because they re-
tourne eftsones at certayne seasons,
tymes, and termes, and some name
them their flowers. what name soe-
uer ye geue vnto it, ye shal wite, that
the thyng meant thereby, is nothyng
els but the issuyng of certayne blood,

What is
meant by
this worde
Termes.

The first booke.

comprehended in the baynes of the matrix, there by litle and litle collected and gathered betweene terme & terme, and so agayne at wont and accustomed tymes, by nature expelled and sente forth.

The which blood, the matrix baines do attract from the great ^{vena caua}, into this part, and that not sodaynely or at once, but very soberly, and with much leasure, yea, so much as there is space betweene the one hauing of the flowres & the other (Whiche is commonly three weekes, more or lesse, accordyng to the womans wont) so long be these sayde baynes in filling, and yf they were soner full, soner also woulde they sende it forth againe. For when they be once replenished, they can not conueniently or naturally contayne or drawe any more, tyl they be lyghtened and discharged of that that is drawen alreedy.

Wherfore at the foresayde certayne circuities and termes, the small endes of these matrix baynes open them selues in

in the inner face or superficte of the matrix, after an insensible & secrete priuie sort, and so let to passe forth this blood, which as I haue sayd, is called the womans termes.

The cause and reason why nature created this perpetual course of termes in women, is this: Forasmuche as almyghtie God had so institute that women shoulde be conceaued, efformed, or fassyoned, augmented, nouryshed, and brought to perfection. This coulde not be done vnlesse there were a commodious and conuenient place to this office assigned and destinate, whereof nature created the wombe or matrix to be the sayde receptacle, & house of office wherein she mought at her leasure worke her deuine feates about the seede once conceaued.

The cause
of the ordi-
nauce of
termes.

Agayne it is not inough the seede to be placed, vnlesse also it haue foode and nouryshment, to the encrease and augmentation of the same, wherefore prudent Lady nature full wisely hath provided

The first booke.

uider, that there shoulde alwayes be prest and redye a continuall course and resort of blood in the vaines of the matrix, as a very naturall course, spryng, fountayne, or Wel, euermore redye to arouse, water, and nourishe the feature, so sone as it shalbe conceined, yea although the woman do neuer conceiue, other because she accompanieth not with man, other els for some other infirmitie, yet is there no fault in nature, who hath prepared a place and foode to be at all tymes in a redynesse.

Which foode, although it is ordeyned for this necessary purpose, yet whē the purpose fayleth (as it doth when there is no feature in the wombe to be fedde therewith) it should be to the place but a burthen and vnprofitable load, there to remayne or lynger: wherfore then I say, at her set and prescript tyme she labourerh to cleare her self of it, and to expell it as superfluous and seruing to no vble. The which thing when she hath so done, yet vnto the sayde vaines of this
con-

continuall spring, resorteth of newe agayne other freshe blood in the place of that that is departed, Whiche by litle and litle coling into them, in the wont circuite of time refilleth them, and then yet issueth agayne, and so this continual course doth kepe alwaies in Women, from their youth, tyll they come to about fiftie yerres of age, or litle more or lesse, at what time naturally this spring dryeth away, which when it is gone, it is impossible for the woman to beare any mo children. For were the woman neuer so yong & lusty, yet yf she neuer had her termes (as some suche there be) she shal neuer also haue no childre, albeit it may be that she may conceaue, but the seede conceaued can not proue, but melteth & issueth forth agayne for lacke of nutriment. Itē ye shal note, that where as some write & saye that the womens termes folowe the course of the moone, so that in the full or in the wane of the moone they shuld alwaies come: this is not true, for they haue them at one time
and

They that
haue no termes
can not
beare chyl-
dren.

The first booke.

Termes
come not to
all women
lyke.

and other in all seasons of the moone. Againe, as they come not to all women after one sort, or at one season, so is the tyme of their duraunce not all one in euery woman, for in some they lynger vpon them. v. vi. vii. yea. viii. dayes at ech terme, to their great effeoblishment & strong paines in the backe. In some other comonly they passe not the space of thzee dayes at the vttermost, wherefore such sustayne litle or no paynes at that tyme.

To be short, all women (for the most part) which be of very delicate & moyst complexions (as the sanguyne cheefely be) haue greatest abundance of termes, and longer tyme doth it endure vpon them. And contrary, such as be dry and collerike, other by nature, or labour and trauaile, & suche that be of complexion cold, haue least stoz of termes, and lesse tyme do they endure vpon them. After what maner the feature conceaued is fedde and nouryshe with this bloode (matter at other times of y termes) I
Wyll

Wyll declare, When that I haue some-
what firste shewed the nature of cer-
tayne caules, wherein the feature con-
ceaued is wrapped and inuolued.

Of the three caules or Wrappers wher-
in the infant is lapped. Capi.xiiii.



he seede concea-
ued into y^e wombe
or matrix of the
mother, anon it is
implected, clip-
ped, & embraced of
the inner face of y^e
matrix, y^e mouth
or port thereof in

The feature
conceaued is
wrapped in
three caules.

the meane while closed & shut exquisite-
lye. The seede then when it hath ben a
certayne litle space in the wombe, by
the naturall heate, or rather by the in-
set and ingenite vertue of that place, is
enironed & enclosed rounde with three
diuers coates, caules, or, Wrappers,
which in Latin they call (*Inuolucra.*)

The first and moſte immediate or
nearest

The first booke.

The first
caule

nearest to the body of the conception, is a very thinne and cleare caule or skinne, whiche contayneth rounde about the whole feature, and yet is fastened to no part of the feature, but onely at the navel, by certayne baynes and artires, whereof we wyll speake anone, this caule in Greke is called Annios, in Latin Agniua, for cause it is as delicate as lambes be. The Midwives commonly call it the coyfe or biggen of the chylde, and some call it the chyldees shert, the which also manye tymes proceedeth alone with the chylde, eyther vpon the chyldees head, or one of y armes or legges. And then the women reserue it as a thyng that shoulde betoken some great lucke to the chylde in tyme to come, for they beleue that euery chylde hath not suche a coyfe, because it doth appeare but seldome alone, vnaccompanied with the other caules. Betwene this wrapper or coyfe, and the body of the infant, is collected and gathered the yelowish sweat which euapozeth continually from the skyn

skinne of the infant, whylest it is in the wombe.

The second wrapper oz caule in Greke The second wrapper.
is called Allantoides, in latin Farciminosa, in
Englishe, these two termes do signifie
(haggiswyle) for because that it is fas-
tioned much after the shape of the out-
warde skinne oz bagge of an haggisse
pudding. The inner face and superficie
of this caule is smoth and moyste, faste-
ned to no part of the first wrapper, but
onlye at the nauell of the chylde, and
contayneth also rounde about in his
compasse and cavitie oz holownes, the
whole childe, and the saide first caule.

Betweene this and the first caule, is where the
vryne of the
childe be-
commeth.
gathered together all the store of vryne
that the chylde maketh, duryng the
time it is in the mothers wombe, wher-
in the industry of nature is to be lau-
ded, which so prouideth, that this pisse
oz vryne of the infant should be expelled
betwene these two caules, and not re-
mayne about the body therof, lest with
the accrimonye and eager sharpenesse
hereof,

The first booke.

hereof, it should endamage and greene the tender body of the baby.

The thirde
wrapper na-
med Chorion

The thirde wrapper of the feature is named Chorion of the Grekes, in Latin, secunde or secundina, in English ye may call it the secundine: Albeit that in the second booke folowynge, I do commonly vse to name y^e whole afterbyrth, the secundine. And no doubt but that the auncientes which gaue the name of (secunde or secundina) to this wrapper, gaue the name of the whole to the part, for this terme (secunde) or (secundina) is proper & most due to the afterbyrth, the which afterbyrth, is nothing els but an issuing forth, and proceeding of these three wrappers or caules, together with such grosse excrementes as haue ben engendred and remayning in the wombe, during the tyme of conception, and that immediatly after the chylde is first proceeded & come to lyght, for first issueth the infante, and then secondlye, the foresaid afterbirth, & therfore it may be iustlye called the second birth or secundine.

This

This Wrapper oz caule then, doth not vniuersally, and in euery part compasse and couer the infant as the other two Wrappers do, but onely the myddle region, as it were from the vpper part of the waste, to the share of the infant, so that it is compassed with this Wrapper as with a broade hoope ryng, the latitude oz breadth whereof, is commonly to be esteemed about the breadth of. vi. oz. viii. fingers, and so girdeth the childe round about the body therof, as it were a broade gyrtth oz swadlyng bande, but yet ye must not vnderstand that it shuld touche immediatlye the body of the infant, for betweene this and the bodye thereof (as I haue declared before) be the foresaid two other caules oz Wrappers, which generally incloseth rounde the whole corpes of the infant, wher as this hoope caule compasseth and couereth but the middle region therof only.

The office and propertie of this Wrapper is suche: Fyrst the vtter face of it The office of the hoope caule. cleaueth and is affixed oz basted verrye

Gi

exact

The first booke.

exactly to the inner face and Walles of the Matrix, by meanes of vnumerable small baynes and artyzes, which at this tyme do shewe them selues more clearely in the face of the Matrix, then at any other time, the which also cleaue vnto this hoope caule in euery parte thereof, touchyng the same Matrix, so that the saide hoope caule and the inner syde of the Matrix be fasted very thicke together, by the immediate meanes of the sayde baynes and braunches, euen much lyke as the body of the Iuy tree basteth and fasteneth it selfe vnto the Walles of trees, whereby it creepeth by many hearie fibres or small threedes.

This coniuction betweene the Matrix and the hoope caule, reacheth vniuersally so farre and so broade, as the latitude and longitude of the hoope caule doth extende it selfe rounde about in the Matrix. And these foresayd baynes and artires do not only knyt and vnite these two together, but also entreth into the substance of the hoope caule at euery part

part thereof. And Within the sayd substance of the hoope caule, these manyfold smal braunches meete, & entermingle the one With the other, the baynes With the baynes, and the Artires With the Artires, so that in theyr recountre and meetyng, they produce alwayes bigger and bigger baynes and Artires, (but fewer) tyll at the last all these become two great baynes, and two great artires, the Whiche foure vessels from hence proceede together, passe & pearse through the other two caules spoken of before, and so entreth into the Nauill of the child, so that the three caules by the meanes hereof be attached, nayled, and fastened to the childes nauil, and When they be entred into the Nauil, the two baynes degenerate in one, the Whiche frō this place mounteth vpwārd along the inner superficie of the belly, vntyll it haue attayned into the liuer, wher it entering, diuideth it self againe into many flippes, so that no doubt the blood is carried through this nauill bayne, from the

The first booke.

vaynes of the mothers Matrix into the liuer of the chylde, from whence againe it is attracted into al partes noysshable of the Infant.

Agayne, the two Artyzes passe from the Nauell downewarde, the one along the ryght syde of the chyldes bladder, the other along the left, tyll it attayne to the share Artires, whereof we spake before. Through these Artyzes, lyuely spirite and freshe ayre is deriued out of the mother, into the chylde, where with the naturall heate of the chylde is viuified and refreshed.

And these two Artires with the foresayde nauyll vaine, when the chylde is borne, begin to wyther and drye, euerye day more and more, & become much like a harpe string, without any holownesse or cauitie. Yet ye shall note that there is another vessell, which taketh his originall at the bottome, founde, or vpper part of the chyldes bladder, and extendeth it selfe to the nauyll of the Infant, through which it passeth vntyll it come betwene

betweene the fyrst and the seconde caule ^{with which way}
 without the chyldes body, where, by a ^{the chyld}
 priuie issue deuised by nature for the ^{both expell}
 same purpose, is expelled the brine of ^{the brine.}
 the Infant, proceeding by this brine
 wayne from the bladder, as partly was
 spoken of before, that part of this brine
 baine which is within the body, when
 the chyld is borne dryeth and wither-
 eth away, as I sayde of the other.

The inner superfiicie or face of this
 Chorion is very strongly affixed and fast-
 ned to the vtter superfiicie of the seconde
 caule named Allantoides.

As for the bastynge that is betweene
 the Matric and Chorion, many tymes it
 is weakened and effeoblshed by reason
 of euyll, flegmaticke, or colericke hu-
 mours therabout, betweene the bastin-
 ges conceaued, whiche ouermuche ha-
 bouiding, do cloy the said bastynge vaines
 or strynges, whereby manye tymes the
 one seuereth from the other before con-
 uenient season, & so causeth abozement.
 The mouthes or specks of the vaines in
 the

The first Booke.

The sub-
stance of
Chorion.

the matrix, wherby it cleaueth to Choriō;
be called in latin Acetabula & Cotiledones, for
what cause, or vpon what reaso, is both
nedelesse and vnprofitable here to be re-
hearled. Agayne, the substance of this
Chorion is not thinne like a skin, bladder,
or caule: but of al other partes of the bo-
dy, it may be most worthyly resembled
to the spleane or melt in a man or beast,
the corpulencie or thicknes whereof, is
as much or more as the thicknes of the
thumbe, the colour swartishe black. Of
which colour also the blood therein con-
teyned, is as the remayne and refuse of
the purer, attract and drawen natural-
lye of the Infant, by the abouenamed
navil bayne. So that, to be short, Chorion
is the immediat receptacle and receauer
of al the baynes and artires, to be dedu-
ced from the Matrix to the chylde, and
the chylde receaueth only at his hande
the two baynes and Artires, whiche
by the way as they passe & pearse thro-
row the other two calles, to wardes the
chylde's Nauill, they sende into eche of
the

the caules innumerable small eye baynes and artyzes, Whereby the caules be susteyned, and encreased also.

The Termes then which were wont at other times to sturre theselues in the Matrix baynes, and at certayne circuittes to issue forth: Nowe When there is a feature or chylde in the same Matrix conceaued, they proceede no more forth (as superfluous) but remayne and be reserved to the necessarie nutriment of the feature, and some part therof reflueth & is reuered to the womens brestes, there to become mylke, as shalbe sayde in the next Chapter. And nowe hath nature her purpose wherfore she made and created this course of blood, as hath ben Written sufficiently in the Chap. before.

But here ye shall note, that they be greatly deceaued and abused, which call the Termes the womans purgation, or the cleansyng of theyr blood: as who should say that it were the refuse, drosse and byler part of the other blood remainyng in the body, naturallye every
G iij moneth

The first booke.

The termes
be of so hol-
some blood,
as any other
part in the
body.

moneth sequestrate and separated from
the purer, for the vilitie and euill quali-
tie therin comprehended. For vndoub-
tedly this blood is euen as pure and hol-
some as all the rest of the blood in anye
part of the body els.

The chyld
being in the
wombe, no-
rished of the
purest blood

Is it to be thought, that nature would
feede the tender & delicate Infant in the
mothers Wombe, With the refuse of the
blood, or not rather With the purest of
it: Yes, and therfore forbecause that she
woulde that the pure blood commyng
fro the Matrix daynes shoulde be made
yet purer, she suffereth not the same to
enter immediatly into the Infant, but
first vseth another meane, and sendeth it
into Chorion or the hoope cal (as I haue
sayd befoze) Where truely it hath a cer-
tayne circulation and another digesti-
on, wherby it is defecate, and clenfed ve-
ry exquisitly, by the diligencie of nature
attenuated and fined, and so at the laste
sent forth into the Infant, leauyng all
the grosser part in the spungy bodye of
the hoope caule.

¶ Pet

Yet much more are to be detested and
 abhorred the shamefull lyes and flaunder
 der that Plinie, Albertus magnus de secretis mu-
 lierum, & diuers other mo haue Wrytten, Slaunders
 of the Ter-
 mes.
 of the venemous and daungerous infec-
 tiue nature of the womans flowres or
 termes, the whiche all be but dreames
 and playne dotage. To rehearse theyr
 fond wordes here, were but losse of inke
 & paper, Wherefore let them passe with
 theyr aucthoys.

Which of the thre Matrix baynes conteyne the
 Termes, and howe the Melke commeth
 to the womans brestes.

Cap.rb.



IShewed you here
 before, that to thre
 different partes &
 regiōs of the Ma-
 trix, there resorted
 from thre different
 partes of vena caua,
 thre sundrie bayne
 slips. Nowe whi-
 che of these slippes shoulde bryng the
 blood

The first booke.

blood called the **Termes** into the **Matr**ix, or from which of them the termes shoulde proceede, it is harde clearly to discusse, but onlye by lykely coniectures. And yet it is a thyng very necessarye to be knowen, for the redyer aduertisement holbe medicines for that purpose shoulde be applyed in that place, when neede shoulde be, eyther to prouoke the **Termes** by some casualtie stopped, or els contrary to restrayne them immoderately flowyng. For yf the bottome baynes of the **Matr**ix do contayne only the **Termes**, then should any medicine conueyed vnderneath profite nothyng, except it be conueyed so farre vp, that it maye attayne within the holownesse of the **Matr**ix, the whiche is verye lytle when the woman is not with chylde.

Agayne, yf the necke baynes of the **Matr**ix do only conteyne these termes, then needed medicines to be applyed no farther then to that place. As for the thirde **Matr**ix baynes, there is none
that

that doth once suspecte the **Termes** to
proceede from them: But manye there
be, which do suppose the termes to issue
both at the necke vaines, and at the bot-
tome vaines also, but most notably at
the necke vaines, for because (say they)
that these vaines do appeare more con-
spicuous and notable to the eyes when
a woman is cut open, then do the bot-
tome vaines, which may be very skant-
ly perceaued, wherfore they thinke that
these necke vaines shoulde be the grea-
ter stirrer of **Termes**.

Agayne (say they) we see many tymes
that after the woman is conceaued, yet
doth there issue termes tyll the thirde or
fourth, yea sometymes the fyfth mo-
neth, the which now we at this tyme can
not proceede out of the **Matrix**: for the
port or mouth therof, accordyng to auc-
thours opinions, is so closed after the
seede conceaued, that the poynt of a nee-
dle can not enter but by violence and
force. wherfore they conclude, that the
Termes at this tyme muste needes
spring

The first Booke.

spring out of the necke bayne, and not out of the bottome baynes.

To those I aunswere, that both at this tyme and at all other tymes, the Termes issue onely out of the bottome baines, & out of such of the necke baines as spreade them selfe onely within the Matrix, as may be seene in the figure. For insomuche as nature dyd create the course of Termes for no other cause, but onely to be a preast and redye foode at all tymes to the feature conceaued, to what purpose shoulde the Termes in the necke baynes of the Matrix serue, where there can neuer be any conception, neither the seede there can remayne? And as concerning the issuing of the Termes after conception, I say that the port of the Matrix is neuer so exactly close, but that such a liquid thing as blood is, may thryll and coole out of it, yea although (as they say) the poynt of a needle can not enter in thereat. For ye may see, that betwene the chynes and chynkes of closelye ioyned boordes, the
the

the poynt of a needle Will not easily enter, yet Water oz any other liquid thing, may passe through Without lette, and euen so is it in the Matrix.

And yet for all this, it shal not folowe that the seede shoulde passe out thereat, as well as the blood, for the seede is of a more fast compacte, and stedfast substance. And besydes this, by that tyme that the seede hath ben but a daye oz two in the Matrix, it waxeth yet more stable and stedfast, by the naturall heate of the place, yea, and is compassed with a thynne ryme, as a tender egge is vnder the shell, Wherefore it Wyll not so soone issue out of the Matrix Without great iniurie.

Here agayne ye shall note the cause Why that Physicians do counsell Women which be desirous to conceane, and can not for lubricitie, moystnes, oz Wateryshnes of the Matrix (Wherby the attractife and attentife power of the Matrix is debilitat and weakened) to take fumes and vapours vnderneath, oz other
medis

The first booke.

medicines at the mouth to drye the sayd humidities, immediatly after the Termes be passed, and not vppon the commyng of them, for yf the Woman should be conceaued vpon the commyng of the sayde Termes, then woulde they commixt them self with the seede, before the seede haue gotten yet any perfect ryme or caule, Whereby the seede shoulde become the thinner and be made fluxy, and so to passe forth agayne out of the Matrix, Washed out With the Termes.

But immediatly after that the Termes be passed, if the seede be conceaued, then shall it haue sufficient tyme to get a strong ryme or caule ouer it, before the Termes come agayne. And agayne, Whyles the little speckes or mouthes of the Matrix vaines be yet open, after the lettynge forth of the Termes, they shalbe the more apt to cleaue and to ioyne the selues With the feature, by meanes of calues wherein the feature is inuolued, and cheefely of Chorion, named the hoope caule, as hath ben sufficientlye sayd

sayde here before.

¶ Yet when the seede hath ben thre or
foure weekes in the wombe, it is not of
sufficient quantitie to consume into his
nutriment all the blood that was wont
to resort into the Matrix baynes, wher-
fore the first, second, yea, & third moneth
sometimes at the womans wont tyme
of Termes, there issueth and sheweth
some blood more or lesse, the more in the
whiche were wont at other tymes to
haue aboundaunce of them. &c. And ye
shall note that when the child is concea-
ued, & that the caule ^{Chorion} is fastened &
basted to the matrix by the baynes ther-
of, yet do not all the baynes of the matrix
attaine to the said ^{Chorion}, but a certaine,
so far as ^{Chorion} doth reach, howbeit the
larger that ^{Chorion} groweth with y^e child,
the mo baynes doth he couer, wherfore
fro those baynes that be not yet affixed
vnto ^{Chorion}, do the termes flowe at this
time: But whē the child beginneth once
to come to a greater perfectiō & growth,
then is all the Terme blood reserved
in

The first booke.

in the Matrix, as litle enough to satisfie the chyld, and then also part thereof mounteth vp into the brestes, and becometh mylke, as shalbe sayde hereafter.

Yet agayne to confirme myne opinion, that the Termes do only issue out of the vauite of the Matrix: We shall vnderstande, that at sundry tymes I haue had two diuers Women in cure, the one in London, and the other in Paris: Of which, the one by a fall of her horse, the other by a violent thrust and squat on the buttockes vpon the harde stones in the streete, beyng both neare the time of theyr purgation, chaunced also both of them into one maner of disease (that is to say) immediatlye herevppon, theyr Termes dyd issue. And so continued dayly, to the one of them, the space of halfe a yere, & to the other a whole yere, so that after that time the Termes stayed agayne, and issued no moze dayly as befoze, but once in foure wekes, at what time they boyded great lumpes, kakes, or cloddes of blood, congealed together
even

even lyke the liuer of a beast. And in the meane time, betweene eche boydying of these lumps of blood, (whiche as I haue sayde come to passe once in foure wekes) euery day continually appeared and issued there whyte flowres (as they named it.)

Nowe to declare the particuler occasions of this maner of boydying of the termes, ye shal vnderstand, that by the force of the fall and squat, the Matrix baynes brake, and that so muche the more promptly, that they were the fuller of blood, and that nearer their tyme of purgation, vppon whiche bracke, the blood dayly issued after ward, whereby the vigour & kind heate of the Matrix, by litle and litle decreased and decayed, frigiditie and coldnesse succeeded. By whiche occasion also the mouth or port of the Matrix, waxed the more contract and narrower, for colde closeth, knitteth, & congeleth. Hereto helped also not a litle the great vse of colde byndying medicines, whiche eche of them dyd apply to

The first booke.

this place at the simple counsaile of ignorant persons.

The port then of the Matrix by this occasion closed & contracted, the blood went alwayes dayly to procede, remaineth within the Matrix, where as fast as it droppeth and cooleth out of the baynes, it congeleth and cluddereth together, lyke as ye may see, that when a man is let blood in a basin or other vessel, and that the blood stande still in it the space of .v. or .vi. houres, it wylbe concret and congiled in a cludder lyke a lyuer, the watery part thereof swimming and flitting aboue vppon the face of it: and euen so is it of the blood congiled in the Matrix, so that when there is so much of this congiled blood concealed together in the said matrix, that it can not contayne it any lenger, then violently and perforce it issueth out together, with farre greater peril, danger, and dolour to the woman, then though she laboured with a childe.

The Whyte flowres that issued, during

ring the tyme that this blood gathered in the matrix, was (no doubt) the very waterishe part that fleded when the blood congeled, for that water can neuer congele as the blood doth, wherfore euerye day as fast as the blood dyd congele in the matrix, so faste also dyd the water separte it selfe from the blood, and so issued.

Notwithstanding I am not ignorant that the very Whyte flowres in dede do procede from the seede caviars, into the angles or corners of the matrix, and so fro thence outwarde, the which disease also men haue manye tymes. And it cometh eyther of the aboundaunce of fleugme in the body, or of the corruptiō and euill qualitie mixed in the seede. &c.

These examples as I suppose may be sufficient evidences, that the Termes spring alwayes fro within the matrix, & not from any part of the necke therof. Item I haue sene diuers other womē, in whom their termes haue staied the space of .vi. viii. & x. wekes, wherewith

The first booke.

their bellies haue encreased and wered bigger, so that they haue thought themselves to be with chylde: Notwithstanding, at the last haue boyded suche lyke lumpes of blood, as I haue spoken of here before, not without greate peryll and daunger to them in the boydyng, wherewithall their bellies haue relaxed and decreased agayne. And thus I make an ende, to talke anye more of the nature and course of the Termes: and now wyll I declare somewhat of the conueyaunce & course of the milke into the womans brestes: for there is great affinitye, communitie, and familiaritie betweene the Matrix & the brestes, whiche naturally do perceaue and feelee anon when the matrix hath conceived, and then begyn they to bryue & to make ready their part, agaynst the tyme that the Matrix hath aldone her part, that is, agaynst the chylde be borne. The mylke whiche commeth to the brestes, is engendred of the Termes (according to the most mens opinions.)

But

But to knowe whiche way the sayde Terme shoulde attayne from the matrix to the breaſtes, ye ſhall vnderſtand, that the vppermoſt and greateſt bayne of the ſeconde diuiſion, ſpoken of in the xiii. chap. Where it attaineth the hockle bone, redye to paſſe out of the holoneſſe of the belly into the thigh, before that it perſe the kell called *peritonium*, it ſendeth forth a notable vaine braunche, which from hence mounteth vpwarde along the belly betwene the right muſcle and the ouerthwart, til it come a litle aboue the nauell, Where the extreme oz vpper ende thereof diuideth it ſelfe in many folde litle braunches, meetyng and entermingling them ſelues with the extreme litle braunches oz ſlippes of another lyke bayne, deſcending from the vppermoſt cheſtbone, downe along the inſide of the cheſt, and the inſyde of the vpper part of the belly, vntyll it meete with the foresayde mounting bayne, a litle aboue the nauell.

And ye ſhall note, that this bayne
Hij braunche

The first booke.

bzaunche proceadyng from vena caua, at the highest chestbone downward along the inner side of the chest or brest, by the way as it passeth, it yeldeth certayne litle slippes and small bzaunches of it self, betwene the ribbes into the brestes. Wherefore the consent of all aucthours is, that by the meanes of these descending bayne bzaunches at both sides of the bodye, & the other ascending bayne bzaunches on both sides of the bellye, there shoulde be great communitie and fellowship betweene the brestes in women, and the Matrix or the wombe.

For doubtlesse by common experience, ye may see that when y^e time of conception in women is, & that by this meanes the termes be stopped, then as the termes do deminishe & waxe lesse, so doth the mylke in the brestes encrease and waxe euery day more & more, as who might say that the superfluitie of blood wonte at other tymes to boyde in the name of **Termes**, now at this tyme by the prouidencie and prouisiō of nature, is
retayn

retayned as no superfluitie, but rather a necessary humour, reuerted and destinate another waye, that is to saye, sent from the baynes of the Matrix parte thereof vpwarde by the forenamed ascendyng bayne branches, at their handes agayne receiued and naturally attracted by the other descendyng brest baynes, thzough whom it is caryed into the brestes, where by newe naturall circulations it is digested into whyte milke, being before red blood, redy now prepared to nozyshe the chylde when nature shall sende it into the worlde.

Agayne, so long as the woman getteth sucke to the chylde, & hath store of mylke in her brestes, her termes be of very litle or no quantitie. These be evidences that there should be great familiaritie betweene the Matrix and the brestes, forsomuch as the ebbing of the one, is the flowyng of the other: wherefore Phisitions sometimes, when the flowres issue more vehemently then nedeth, they set boryng glasses vnder the

H iij

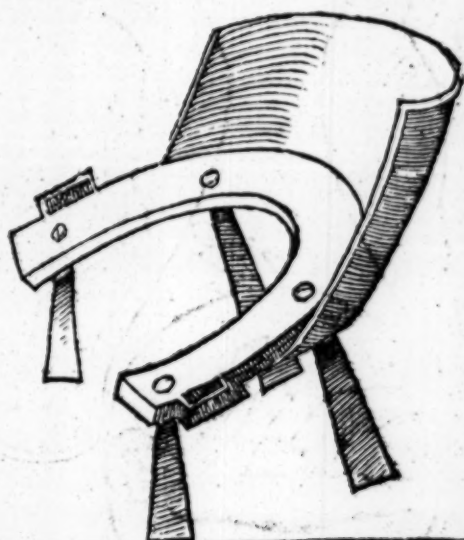
brestes,

The first booke.

brestes, meanyng thereby to reuert and
returne vpwarde, the matter enclined
to much downewarde, the which prac-
tise how much it preuaileth, I wyl not
here dispute. Yet in this matter to dis-
cusse the very veritie as neare as reason
and the knowledge of Anothomie will
geue leaue, ye shall not vnderstande my
sayinges that I should meane that al-
wayes when the termes stop beneath
by anye colde, thought, or other occasi-
ons, by and by the same blood to sty-
and mount vp into the brestes, & there
to become milke: for the contrary here-
of is dayly seene. For most commonlye
they in whom these termes do stop, for
any other cause then conception, the su-
perfluous blood retayned in the bodye,
and in the baynes wandring, causeth
to the partie great headache, taketh a-
waye their stomacke, and engendreth
diuers other inconueniences, neither in
the meane whyle is there any thing the
more mylke in the brestes.

Wherefore ye may wel saye, that the
cause

THE BIRTH FYGVRES
THE WOMANS STOOLE
THE



THE BYRTHE

III



IIII



V



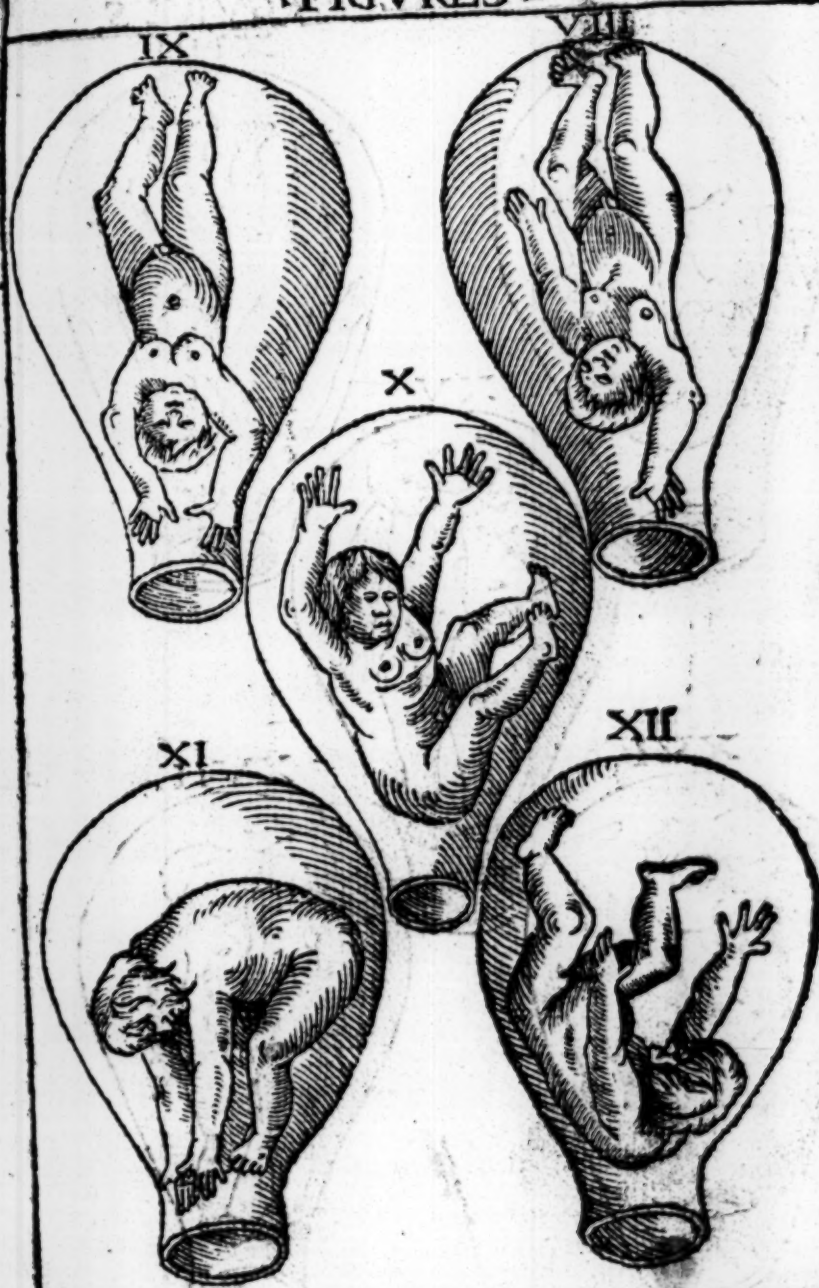
VI



VII



FIGVRES



THE BYRTHE FYGVRES
XIII



cause of plentie of mylke in y^e womans brestes in time of her being with childe, and much more afterwarde, cometh chiefly by a priuie naturall instinction, whereby it is geuen vnto the brestes at that time more then at anye other, to draw vnto it selfe greater abundaunce of blood, conuerting and altering the same by the propertie of the place, into conuenient mylke.

It is not a sufficient cause to replenishe the brest the Termes to be by any occasion stopped beneath, but there must also concurre the attractive power, inset in the brestes to drawe the sayde blood (matter at other times of the Termes) without which attraction, be the Termes neuer so long stopped, yet shall the brestes be nothing the fuller, if it chaunce that this attractive power halte or be not able to attract sufficient matter to make mylke vpon for the Infant, then Phisitōs are wont to helpe the debilitie of nature, with cupping glasses set vpon or vnder the brestes, or els with gentle

The first booke.

the attractive emplaſters applied to the ſame places.

And although that into the breaſtes do reſorte greate ſtoze of other vaynes, ſome deſcending from the vaines of the ſhoulders, & other ſome from y^e vaines paſſing by the armeholes into the armes and handes, the which in moyſon and notable bigneſſe, muche ſurmount the quantitie of the aboue named deſcendyng breaſt vaynes, as it maye appeare evidently in many women which haue theſe vaynes appearing in the ſuperficie of their breaſtes immediatly vnder the ſkin, very conſpicious and ſightful: yet notwithstanding it is thought by ſtrong coniectures, that the mylke in the breaſtes ſhould be engendred only vpon the blood mounting from the aforeſayde aſcendyng Matric vaynes, and not vpon the blood conteyned in the other vaynes, howe conſpicious ſo euer they be, ſo that the blood in them comprehended, ſerueth onely to the nouriſhment of the ſubſtaunce of the breaſtes

brestes them selues, & not to the main-
tenaunce of the mylke.

To declare here curiously the maner
that nature vseth in circulatynge of the
attracted blood, wherby alterations is
made from one colour to another, wold
require a longer processe, the which for
brevitie we will omit at this time, with
many other problemes, doubtles, and
difficulties concernynge the same. And
so we make an ende of this first booke.

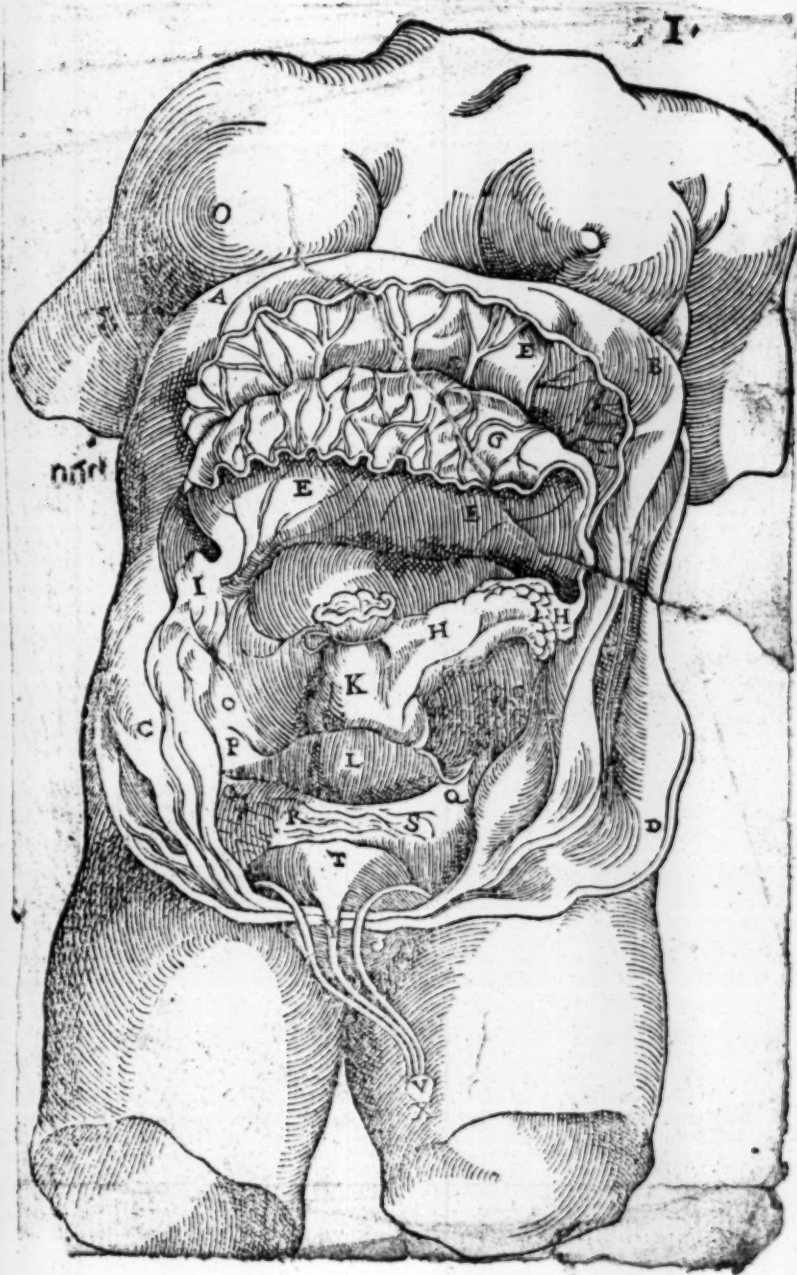
The first booke.

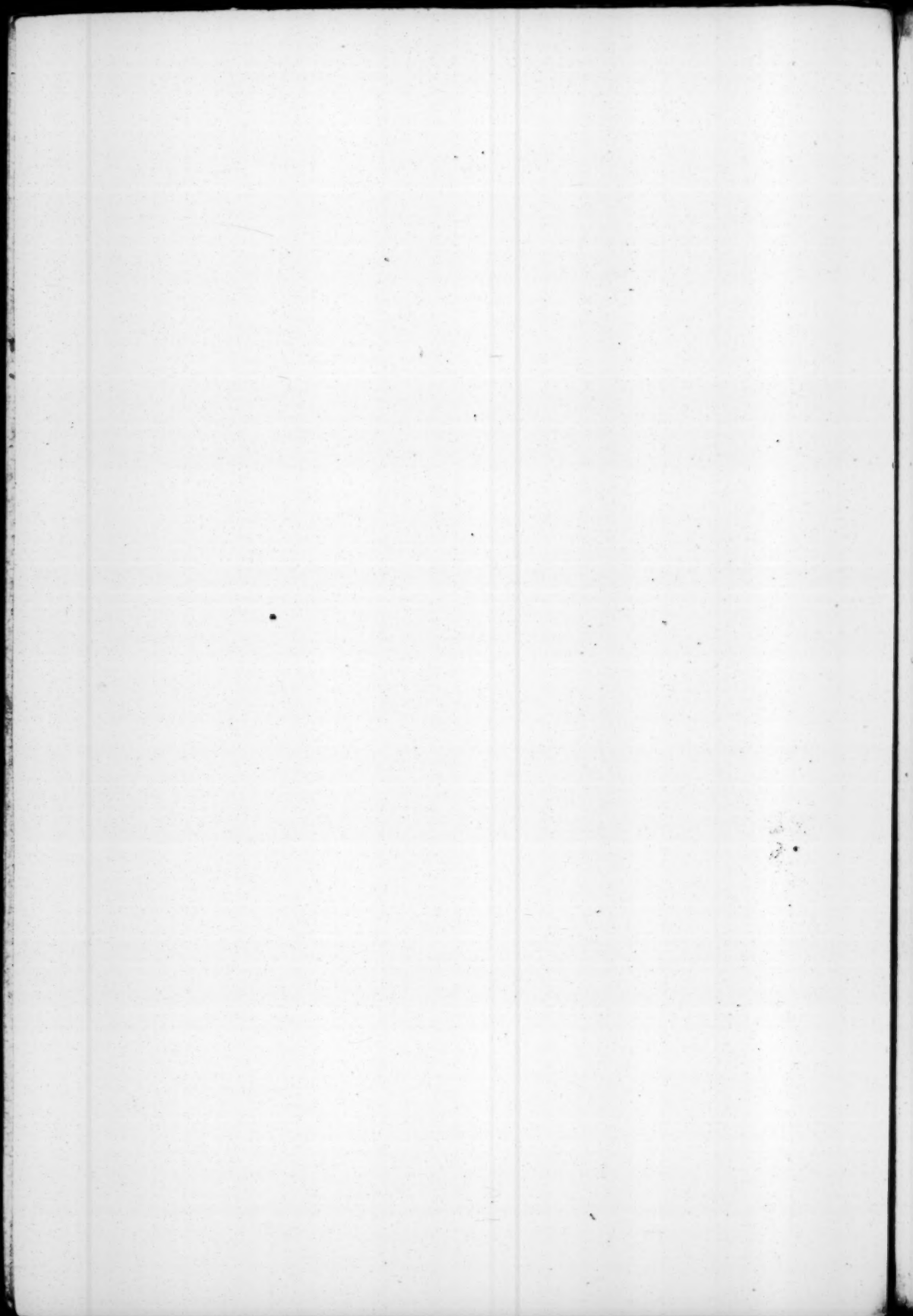
The declaration by letters, of the figures folowynge, wherein be set forth to the eye, every part in woman, mentioned in this booke before: Which in the former printings hath ben corrupted, but nowe truely set forth.

The first figure of the partes of women, with the declaration and characters of the same.



In this first figure is set forth the tronke or stocke of a womans body, laid on y^e ground, whose peritonium is opened with the muskels of the Abdomen, and turned ouer toward y^e inside, according to the vse of cutting, & afterwarde we haue cut away all the bowels or entrayles from Mesenterium, the strayght entrayle beyng yet left in the bodye, with also the whole Mesenterium, whose pannicles we haue here somewhat taken away, and set a portion from the other, that the nature of Mesenterium might come to lyght, but this present figure is for this cause principally declared and set forth, that it myght so shewe the position of the matrix or wombe, and the bladder, as in this woman it is seene, no part of the sayde matrix or wombe beyng moued. For here is as yet no pannicle pluckt away from the matrix or wombe, but that all thinges are here yet wholly seene, lyke wyse as in women some





some what fat they do appeare to the cutter, the bowels beyng taken away. For women are so fatte, that when they be beryed and kylled with long sicknesse, and become mosse leanest, then they shewe no kynde of processe of vessels, vnlesse the pannicles or thynne couerynges be seperated a sunder.

A.B.C.D. The inner face or part of the former seate of Peritonium.

E E A part of Mesenterium, knitting the thynne intrayles to the backe.

FF Here is noted another pannicle of Mesenterium, plucked from the other which we haue marked with G and G. But both the pannicles do shew the order of the vessels of Mesenterium, and order of the harnelles put betweene the distributions of the vessels.

H H In this part of Mesenterium, the entraile Colon was committed and set to, where it was nyest to the straight gut.

I And in this part of Mesenterium, did consist and stande the beginning of the intrayle Colon, or his continuance with the thynne intrailes, and also the blynde gut.

K The straight gutte beyng there cut of where Colon dyd ende, whiche seate or place is ryght agaynst the place of the knitting together of the hockle bone with the lowest turnyng ioyncte of the loynes.

L The former seate of the bottome of the Matris, from whence is nothing perceyued pluckt away.

M The right stone or testicle in a woman.

N The

The first booke.

N The left stone of a woman, and the former part of this is here entirely seene, although there be of the ryght but a small portion perceyued, and it is for this cause, that we haue in such manner set forth the right stone: for both the testicles are couered with a pannicle, whiche pannicle byngeth downe the seede vesselles of a woman, whiche do spring from peritonium: but we haue vncouered the left testicle of that pannicle, with the hande onely without any knyfe, leauyng the ryght as you see. For this pannicle doeth not growe to the former seate of the testicle in anye parte thereof, but lyeth there onely.

O A pannicle springing and growyng forth from the right seate of peritonium, & committing the ryght testicle with the seede vesselles on this side, and those vessels whiche infolde the higher seate of the Matrix to the backe, contayning together the Matrix or wombe, and afterwarde with the pannicle of the other side, constituting the seconde cote of the Matrix.

P This way in the foresayde pannicle, runne forth fleshy fibres or thinne skynnes, constitutyng the ryght Muskle of the Matrix or wombe.

Q With these karacters, the pannicle of the left syde is noted, whiche is correspondent and lyke to that pannicle, which the foresayd **O** did poynt to vs.

R S The former part of the necke of the Matrix, couered as yet, betwene R and S with that cote which

which p partes of peritonium offer vnto it, which bring forth vessels vnto it, and from it, and do knitte it to peritonium: but the space beyng betwene R and S doth shewe the largenesse of the necke of the Matrix. And the wrinkles whiche are seene here, are they whiche the necke of the Matrix fallng into it selfe, not stretched forth agayne, doth shewe in the cutting.

T The bladder whose hinder part is here chieflie seene, for we haue so caste our eye in the declaration and setting forth of this figure, as though we woulde principally beholde in the body beyng prostrate and layde along, the hynder seate of the bladder, whiche loketh towarde the Matrix.

For yf ye wyll suppose and imagine this bodye of a woman, to be set vpryght as that whiche next foloweth, ye shoulde thinke otherwyle then the thing is, that the bottome of the Matrix is set forth much higher then the bladder.

V This is a portion of the nauell, deliuered in the cutting from peritonium, and tourned ouer together with the vesselles seruing properlye to the chyld.

X A portion of a bayne goyng from the Nauell to the lyuer.

Y A way goyng from the hyghest seate or place of the bottome of the bladder pertaynyng vnto the Nauell, and bringyng from thence the brine of the chyld, betweene his seconde and the innermost infolder.

Shew

The first booke.

Ket & Shew two artires creeping forth hyther from the Dauell, by the sides of the bladder, and graft in or continued in this place, to the braunches of the great artire, going principally to the holes of the bones about the priue members.

¶ The declaration of the seconde figure of the members of women, and of the characters of the same.



We haue here taken away the skin from the right teate of this present figure, that the nature of the teates myght, as nygh as maye be, be set before the eyes, & afterward we haue cut away the ventricle with the bowels, and also Mesenterium and the splene, leauing the strayght entrayle in this place vnnedled with, as well as we dyd in the figure before. And moreouer, we haue as it were, taken away from the vttermoost cote whiche Peritonium gaue vnto it, cutting away also all the pannicles, that the vessels carying forth the substance and matter of seede to the stones, and also the vessels carying away the seede from thence to the Matrix, should appeare and be seene. Also we haue tourned ouer the bladder downewarde on the lesse syde, lyke wyse breaking

breakyng the way or conduite whiche beareth forth the brine to it from the ryght kydney, that the insertion of the wayes of bearyng forth the brine to the bladder myght appeare, and that the bladder shoulde not let the inspection or sight of the Matrix or wombe. Last of all, we haue cutte away from this figure a portion of the bones about the priuie members, that the neckes of the Matrix and of the bladder myght the more commodiously be seene.

AA Waynes runnyng forth oftentymes to the teates, from those wayes whiche are offered to the skynne, whiche is brought ouer the heygth of the shoulder.

B Waynes spryngyng from those baynes whiche are led forth by the arme hole to the hande.

C The principall body of the teate.

DD Kernels and fatnesse spreade abroad euey where on the kernelly body, marked with C.

EFGH The hynder outsyde or insyde of the former seate of Peritoneum outward. For the former region of Peritoneum is here bowed bpward and downe warde towarde the syde.

IK Portions of waynes and also Artyres, creepynge forth downe warde, vnder the brest bone from the throte.

L The gybosityte or swellynge seate of the lyuer.

M The holow part of the lyuer is here also somewhat seene.

N A small portion or peece of the wayne goyng from the Nauill to the lyuer.

O The stocke of vena porta is here cut away, with
the

The first booke.

the vesselles brought vnto it.

P The holowe bayne.

Q The great artyze.

R The rootes of the artyzes goyng to the ventricle, the lyuer, the spleane, the caule, and to the bowelles.

S The begynnynge of a bayne infoldyng the fat coate of the left kydney.

T The bayne and artyze whiche bryngeth the whayse humour to the ryght kydney.

V The bayne and artyze whiche bryngeth the whayse humour into the left kydney.

X The begynnynge of the bayne goyng into the fatte coate of the ryght kydney.

Y The former seate of the ryght kydney.

Z The former seate of the left kydney.

aa The way that bryngeth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder, but at the nethermour a is broken away but the portion that is left of this way, and is continued to the bladder, marked with b.

b The way that caryeth forth the brine from the ryght kydney into the bladder.

cc The way that caryeth forth the brine from the left kydney into the bladder.

dd The ryght seede bayne, whose begynnynge the hygher d doth shewe.

e The seede bayne goyng to the left testicle.

f The spryngynge forth of the artyzes of seede.

g The ryght seede artyze.

h The left seede artyze.

ikl The former part of the bottome of the Matrx,

trix, and i sheweth the ryght blunt angle oꝝ coꝝ-
ner of the sayde bottome, where k sheweth the
left, but l sheweth the region oꝝ place of the ma-
trix, where the mouth of his bottome consysteth,
and where his necke begynneth.

m This is the strapte gut. And that I may the
lesse burden both the sydes of this figure with
many letters, I wyll at this present affixe the
Characters but on the one syde only.

n A portion of the bayne and artyze of seede,
whiche do go to the bypper syde of the bottome
of the wombe.

o Portions of the baynes and artyze of seede
goyng to the testicle, and there ioynnyng and go-
yng together, and constituting.

p A body lyke the spire of a steeple, and this let-
ter p doth poynt vs the roote oꝝ foundation of
this body, whereas the sayde roote oꝝ foundation
is committed and ioyned to the testicle.

q From that sayde body such vessels runne forth
into the tunicles, commyttynge and ioynnyng the
testicle to Peritonium.

r The former face oꝝ part of the testicle.

s The begynnynge of the vessel which beareth
foorth the seede from the testicle into the Ma-
trix.

tt The bowinges and turninges ouer agayne of
the vessel which beareth foorth the seede, which
turnynges the sayde vessel maketh round about
the sydes of the testicle.

v The goyng foorth of the vessel which carryeth
foorth the seede of the Matrix.

The first booke.

xx The necke of the Matrix.

y Vessels foldyng in the lower seate of the bottome of the Matrix or wombe, and the necke also of the same.

z A bayne comyng from those vessels to the bladder, which vessels do folde and wynde in the necke of the Matrix, and this Karacter also noteth the insertion of the wayes of the brine.

μ B The hynder seate of the bottome of the bladder.

r The Muskle of the necke of the bladder.

Λ In this seate the necke of the bladder is implanted into the necke of the Matrix.

• Small skinnie portions of fleshe of the necke of the mouth or openyng of the wombe or Matrix, and the small pylloches of the Matrix, with the mouth or openyng of the necke thereof, neede here no speciall declaration with Karacters.

3 The roote of the Artire, goyng into the lowest part of Mesenterium.

α Vessels which do ascende and ryle bpwarde to the muskles of the Abdomen, from the Waynes and Artyres whiche do go into the legge.

The declaration of the Karacters of the thirde figure of women.



This present figure sheweth the matrix or wombe, with the thynne couerynges whiche do bynde it to Peritonion, cut soorth from the bodye, and the

the necke therof is here so folded together, and turned ouer, that the mouth or opening of the bottome of the matrix doth here manifestly shewe it selfe. And we haue lyke wyse so opened the bottome and the necke of the bladder, that the holownes of the same, with the insertion of the wayes of brine, are here manifestly sene.

A The former face of the bottome of the matrix, being not yet vncouered of any pannicle.

B B The necke of the matrix.

C A parte of the bottome of the matrix, swelling forth into the upper seate of the necke of the matrix, in manner of a kirkell.

D The mouth of the bottome of the matrix.

EE A pannicle knitting the matrix to *Peritonewm*, and conteynyng his vessels.

F The left testicle of the matrix.

G The bayne and artire of seede.

H Portion of the seede bayne and artyre, commyng to the upper seate of the bottome of the matrix.

I A portion of the seede bayne and artyre, commyng to the testicle.

K The vessel carrying the seede from the testicle into the matrix.

L The holownesse of the bladder.

M The insertion of the wayes of the brine.

N Here hangeth forth a lytle peece of the wayes of the brine:

The first booke.

The declaration of the karacters of the
fourth table of women.



All braunches running
foorth into the pannicle, where
they are committed and ioyned
to Peritonium.

A portion of the wayne and
artire going into the testicle, fal-
lyng to the vpper seate of the bottome of the ma-
trix.

The commixtion and goyng together of the
seede bayne and artyre, that is lyke the spire of
a steeple, whiche we lyken to the braded baynes
called Varices.

The left testicle.

The vessell caryng foorth the seede from
the testicle into the matrix.

The blunte angle or corner of the bottome of
the matrix, in whom the vessell that bryngeth
foorth the seede attempteth his insertion.

In this seate the bottome of the matrix is
ended into the necke thereof, and in this region
or place is the begynnyng of the mouth or ope-
nyng place thereof.

The necke of the Matrix or wombe.

Here the necke of the bladder is brought forth
into the necke of the matrix, and there endeth.

Those are vessels infolding the nether seate of
the bottome of the matrix, and also his necke.

The swellng brymmes at the mouth of the
necke of the matrix.

The

iv The wayes that bryng the brine from the raynes into the bladder.

¶ The declaration of the Characters of the. v. vi. vii. and. viii. figures.



¶ I haue nowe diuided this fyfth table of the wombe or Matrix, conteynynge a male chylde on the former syde, with a long section or cut, and another whiche are ouerthwart slytte, removing and takynge awaye into the sydes,

partes of the coates of the bottome of the matrix, yea, euen from the vttermoſt infolder of the chylde.

ABCD The inner syde of the sayde infolder of the matrix, whiche before the section was brought about and couered with the infolders of the chylde.

EE The vtter syde of the matrix, and the hygher E noteth the top or the ryght angle or corner of the matrix, brought forth bpwarde and toward the ryght syde, more then toward the left, because it is a man chylde which is in þe wombe.

F The fyfth or the vttermoſte infolder of the chylde.

GG The seconde infolder of the chylde is here

¶

also


The first booke.

also a great part seene.

H A part of the necke of the matrix, to whom in the other syde we haue left growyng to it a bayne and an artire, whiche is pryncipally distributed into the lower seate of the bottome of the matrix.

I Here is also yet left the ryght testicle, that the situation of it myght be seene and perceaued in women beyng with chylde.

C The syrte table sheweth the infolders of the chylde, taken whole away from the matrix, and not broken.

K  **E** vttermosse infolder of the chylde.

L The second infolder of the child, whiche forsomuche as it is transparent in maner of a pannicle, it suffereth the chylde (bewrapt within this third infolder) in it somewhat to be seene.

In the seuenth table we haue diuided the vtter and the seconde infolder of the chylde, with a longe section or cutte, and we haue here expessed and shewed forth both the sayde infolders, taken away from the thirde infolder, and the thirde infolder also yet whole.

M The thyrde or the inmoste infolder of the chylde, whiche because it is so thinne that one maye easlye see through it, the fourme of the chylde lying therein, somewhat sheweth hym selfe to the eyes.

N The

N The proceeding or order of Waynes and Artires, goyng to the Nauyll from the fyrst infolder of the chylde.

OPOP The seconde infolder of the chylde.

And OO shewe his insyde, where PP sheweth his vtter syde.

QR The fyrste infolder of the chylde, where Q noteth the outsyde, and R the insyde, but the proceeding and order of the vesselles by the seconde and the thyrde infolder, are perfectly known without any helpe of the Characters.



AD the eyght Table expresseth the chylde deliuered from al his coates, and so it sheweth hym lying, by the wonderfull prouidence of nature, not as the common opinion of the bulgar sorte of wyrters affirmeth, but as you may here see in these figures, & so doth it lye in the myddest of the wombe. For it is moste vnttrue that the chylde doth lye in the wombe rounde, lyke as it were bowed, so that the knees shoulde touche to the face, but as he is set here in the viii. figure. And obseruyng this true situation of him, you shall fynde commonly none other situation of the chylde, nor ioynt of any ioynt of hym therein, then is here expresse.

But in this figure MMNOPOPQ&R do note the same as in the seuenth Table, saue that M and M do shewe the insyde, or inner part of the thyrde infolder. But S sheweth here privately the goyng forth of the vesselles of the Nauyll

The fyrst Booke.

Mayll, whiche is betweene the Mayll and the
foynnyng together of the vessels with the thynde
infolder, which is also brought forth with a
great space betweene the shewyng, where be
certayne (as it were) knottes or swellynge,
accordyng to the number of the whiche knot-
tes more or lesse, Wydwyues foolyslye do pro-
phesie eyther many or fewe chyldren to the wo-
man, whiche of the learned men is taken but
for a very fantasie, and worthy of reprehensi-
on. And moreouer, when the chylde commeth
foorth (as it chaunceth sometymes) haunyng
that about his necke, they say that it is the
same chyldes destynye to be hanged, with many
other foolyshe conceytes, rather to be laughed
at, then to be beleued.

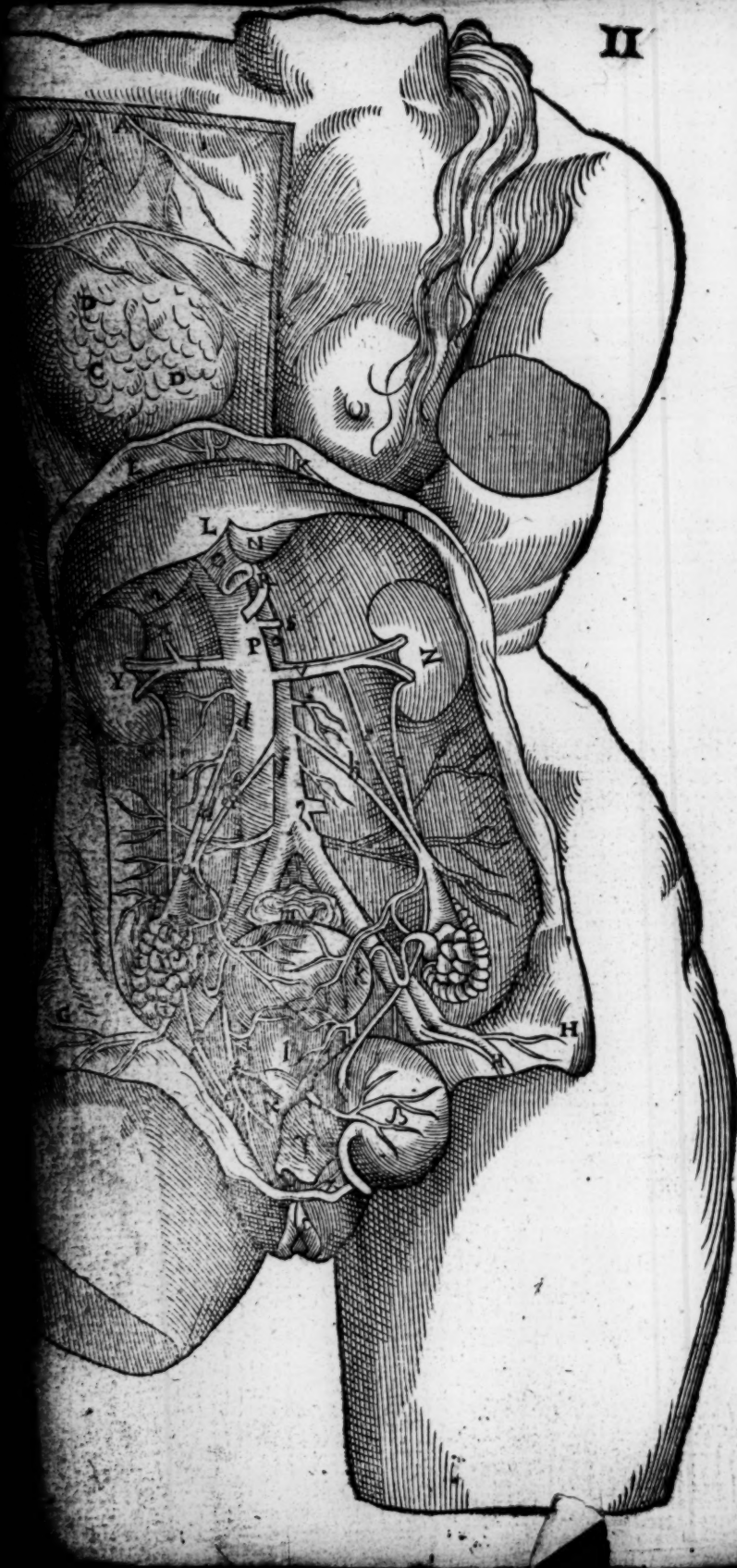
The declaration of the Characters of the nynth figure of women.



AD the nynth figure sheweth
the matrix cut foorth of the bo-
dy, beyng of that bygnesse as it
was seene taken foorth of a wo-
man at the laste Anothomye
which I did see at the vniuersitie
of Padua in Italie. And moreouer we haue so
diuided and cutte asunder the bottome of the
Matrix by the myddle, that the concauitie and
hollowe bought within the same myght be
perceaued, and the thycke substaunce also of
both the coates of the Matrix in women, when
they

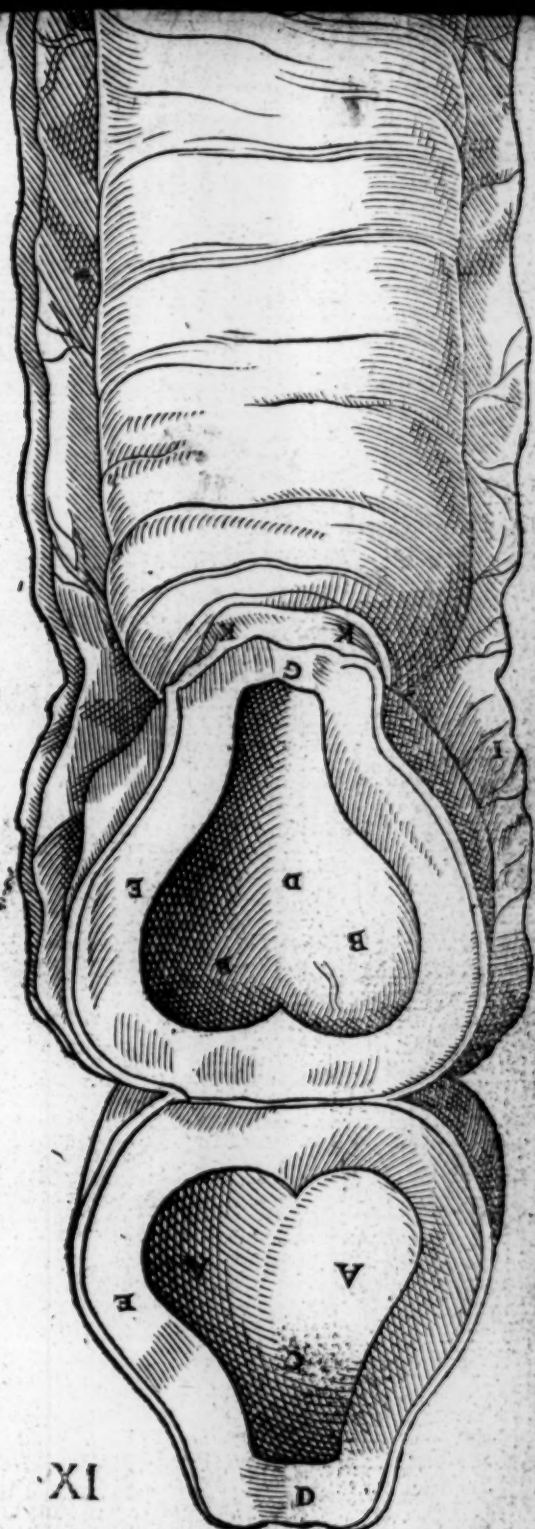


II

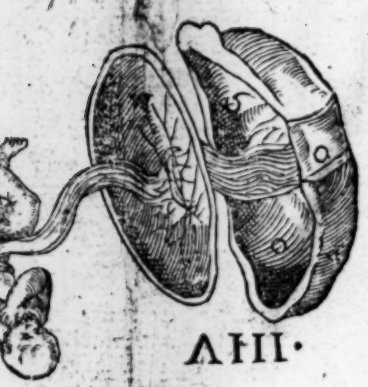


Δ I.





IX.



III.



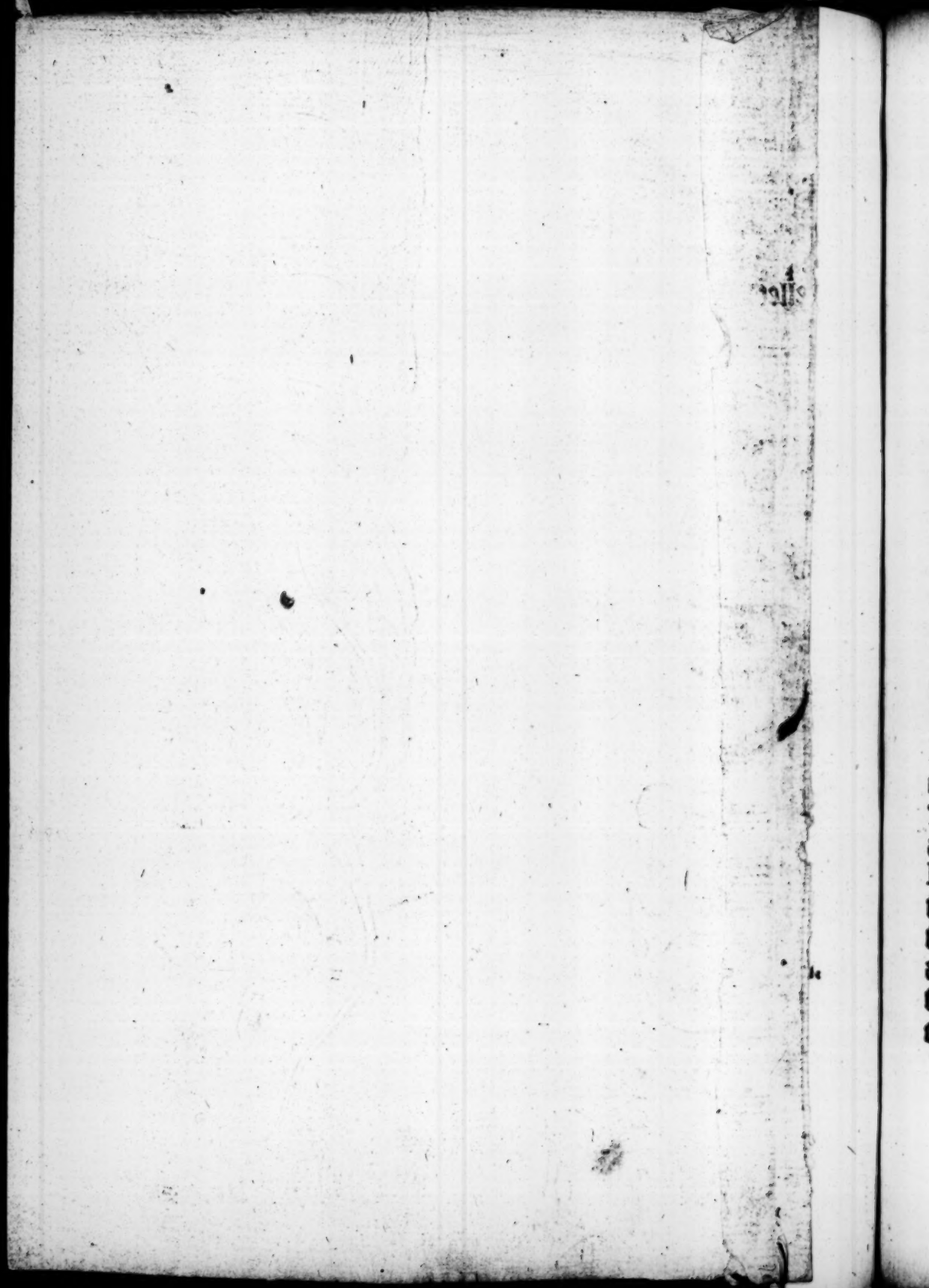
II.



V.



VI.



they be not with chylde.

AABB The concavities and hollow bought of the bottome of the matrix.

CD A line somewhat after the manner of a seame called in Latine Scortum, which doth belong to the place wherein the testicle doth lye, whiche swelth somewhat forth into the bought of the bottome of the matrix.

EE The thicknes of the inner and proper coate of the bottome of the matrix.

FF A portion of the innermost bottome of the matrix, swelling forth downewarde from the hygher seate of the matrix, into the hollowesse and bought of the bottome.

GG The beginning of the necke or opening place of the bottome of the matrix.

HH The seconde or uttermost infolder of the bottome of the matrix, descended from Peritonium.

II Here we have reserved a portion on both the sydes of the thynne couerynges, descended from Peritonium, and conteynyng the matrix.

K Here is also seene the substaunce of the necke of the matrix, because the cutting wherewith we diuided the bottome of the matrix, was begun at this place.

L A part of the necke of the bladder, implanted into the necke of the matrix, casting forth into it the brine. The swelling partes of Abdomen and whatsoeuer is els to be considered thereof, they may be sufficiently knowen without direction of Characters.

FINIS.

The second Booke.

Of the tyme of byrth. And which is called
naturall or vnnaturall
Cap. i.

Tokens to
know when
the tyme of
deliuerance
is neare.

In the first booke we haue
sufficientlye set forth and
described the maner, situa-
tion, & forme of the Ma-
trix wherein man is con-
ceaued, with dyuers other matters ap-
pendyng and concernyng the better vn-
derstandyng of the same. And now we
here in this seconde Booke, we wyl de-
clare the maner of the quytting and de-
liueraunce of the Infant out of the mo-
thers wombe, with other thinges ther-
to appertaynyng. And first here in this
Chapter we wyl declare the tokens and
signes whereby ye may perceaue whe-
ther the tyme of labour be neare or not:
For when the houre of labour appro-
cheth neare, these signes folowynge euer-
more proceade and come befoze.
First certaine dolours and paines be-
gyn to growe about the guttes, the na-
uyll, and in the raynes of the backe, and
like

lyke wyse about the thyghes, and the other places beyng neare to the priuie partes, which lyke wyse then beginneth to swell and to burne, and to expell humours, so that it geueth a playne & euident token that the labour is neere.

But ye shall note that there is two Two sortes of deliuerance. maner of byrthes, the one called naturall, the other not naturall. Naturall byrth is, when the chylde is borne both in due season, and also in due fashion.

The due season is most commonly after the ninth moneth, or about fortie weekes after the conception, although some be deliuered sometimes in the seventh moneth, and the chylde proueth very well. But such as are borne in the eyght moneth, other thei be dead before the birth, or els liue not long after.

The due fashion of birth is this: first The due fashion of byrth. the head cometh forwarde, then foloweth the necke & shoulders, the armes with the handes lying close to the body toward the feete, the face and forepart of the chylde beyng towardes the face and

The second booke.

and forepart of the mother, as it appeareth in the fyrste of the byrth figures. For as hath ben sayde alredye in the fyrst booke, before the tyme of delyuerance, the chylde lyeth in the mothers wombe the head vpward, and the feete downewarde, but when it shoulde be deliuered, it is turned cleane contrarye, the head downewarde, the feete vpwarde, and the face towarde the mothers bellye, and that yf the byrth be naturall. Another thyng also is this, that yf the byrth be naturall, the delyuerance is easie without long taryng or lookyng for it.

The byrth not naturall is, when the mother is delyuered before her tyme, or out of due season, or after anye other fashion then is here spoken of before: As when both the legges proceede first, or one alone, with both the handes vp, or both downe, other els the one vp and the other downe, and diuers otherwise, as shalbe hereafter moze clearelye declared.

Of

The second booke. Fol. liii.

Of easie and breasie, difficult, or dolorous
delyueraunce, and the causes of it:
With the signes howe to knowe
and foresee the same.

Cap. ii.

Very many be the perylles, daungers, and thronges,
which chaunce to women in theyr labour, whiche also
ensue and come in diuers wayes, and for dyuers causes, such as
I shall here declare.

Many perils
chauncing
to women
in theyr la-
bour.

Fyrst when the woman that labour-
eth is conceaued ouer young, as before
xii. or xv. yeres of age (whiche chaun-
seth sometyme, though not very often)
and that the passage be ouer anguste,
streate, or narrowe, other naturallie, or
els for some disease and infirmitie, whi-
che may happen about the parte, as
apostumes, pusses, pyles, or blysters,
and suche other. Through the whiche
causes, nature can not (but with great
dolour and payne) open and dilate it
selfe, to the expellyng and deliuerance
of

The second booke.

of the chylde. And sometime the vesicke
oz bladder, oz other intrayles beyng a-
bout the Matrix oz Wombe, be also a-
postumate and blystered, whiche beyng
greeued, the Matrix oz Wombe likewise
for vicinitie and neighbourhead is gree-
ued with them, & that hindereth great-
lye the deliuerance. Also sometyne in
the fundement are humozrhodes oz pil-
les and other pushes, chappynge oz
chynes, whiche cause great payne. Also
hardnesse and difficultie oz byndyng of
the belly, whiche thinges for the greefe
and payne that ensueth of them, cau-
seth the woman to haue lytle power to
helpe her selfe in her labour.

Furthermore, yf the partie be weake
and of feble complexion, oz of nature be-
ry colde, oz to young, oz very aged, oz ex-
ceedyng grosse and fatte, oz contrary-
wyse to spare and leane, oz that she ne-
uer had childe before, oz that she be ouer-
timorous and fearefull, dyuers, way-
warde, oz such one that wyll not be ru-
led, remouyng her selfe from one place
to

to another, all suche thynges causeth
the labour to be muche more paynefull,
cruell and dolorous, then it woulde o-
therwyse be. Also ye must vnderstande
that generally the byrth of the man is
easier then the byrth of the female.

Item, yf the chylde be of a fuller and
greater groweth, then that it mayeasily
passe that narowe passage, or contrary-
wise, yf it be so faint, weake and tender,
that it can not turne it selfe, or doth it
very slowly, or if the woman haue two
chyl dren at once, other els that it with
the whiche she labourerh, be a monster:
as for example, yf it hath but one bodye
& two heades, as appeareth in the .xvii.
of the birth figures, such as of late was
seene in the dominion of Werdenbergh.

Agayne, When it proceedeth not in
due tyme, or after due fashon, as when
it commeth forth with both feete or
both knees together, or els with one
foote onelye, or with both feete downe-
wardes, and both handes bpwardes,
other els (the whiche is most perillous)

The seconde booke.

sidelong, arselong, or backlong, other els (hauing two at a byrth) both proceede with their feete fyrst, or one with his feete, and the other with his head, by those and dyuers other wayes the woman sustayneth great dolour, paine, and anguysh.

Item, yf the woman suffer abozement, that is to saye, bryng forth her childe in the .iiii. or .v. moneth after the conception, whiche is before the due tyme, in this case it shalbe great payne to her, for so muche as in that tyme, the porte of the wombe is so firmly and strongly enclosed, that vnneth the point of a needle may enter in at it.

Also if the childe be dead in the mothers belly, it is a very perillous thing, for so much as it can not be easily turned, neyther can it welde or helpe it selfe to come forth, or if the childe be sicke or weakened so that it canot for feblenes helpe it selfe.

To knowe
whether the
chylde be
weake in
the mothers
belly.

The which thing may be foresene and knowen by these tokes: If the woman with chylde haue ben long sicke before her

her labour, yf she haue ben soze lasked, if after her conception she haue had dayly and vnwontly her flowres, yf strayght after one moneth vpon the conception, her brestes yelde any mylke, if the childe stirre not, ne moue at suche tyme as is conuenient for it, these be argumentes and tokens that it shuld be very weake. By what tokens ye shall knowe it is dead, I shall shewe you hereafter.

Also there is great perill in labouring, perill in the
secondine. when the secondine or latter birth is ouer fyrmie or strong, and wyll not soone riue or breake a sunder, so that the child may haue his easy coming forth. And contrary wyse, when it is ouer weake, slender or thin, so that it breaketh a sunder before that the chylde be turned, or apt to issue forth, for then the humours whiche are collect & gathered together about this secondine or seconde byrth, passe away soner then they shoulde do, & the birth shal lack his due humidities and moistures, which shuld cause it the easelyer to proceede, & with lesse payne.

The seconde booke.

Excesse of
heate or colde
greatly hin-
dereth the
labour.

The birth also is hyndered by ouer-
much colde, or ouermuche heate, for in
ouermuch colde, the passage and all o-
ther powers of the labouring woman,
be coarcted and made narrower then
they woulde otherwyle be. Lykewyle
ouer much heate debiliteth, weakeneth
and faynteth both the woman and the
chylde, so that neither of them in that
case, can well weld or helpe them selues
for fayntnes.

And farther yf the woman haue bled
to eate comonly suche meate or frutes
which do exiccate or drie, and constraine
or binde, as Medlars, Chestnuts, and
all sowre frutes, as Crabbes, Choke-
peres, Quinces, and such other, with
ouer much vse of Uergeus, and suche
lyke sowre sauces, with Rile, Mill, and
many other thinges, al this shall great-
lye hinder the byrth.

Also the vse of colde bathes after the
fifth moneth folowynge the conception,
or to bathe in such water where Alome
is, Iron, or Salt, or any suche thynges
whiche

whiche do coarcte and constrayne, or yf she haue ben oftentymes heauye and mournyng, or yll at ease, or yf she haue ben kepte ouer hungry and thurstie, or haue vsed ouer much watch and wal-kyng: eyther if she vsed a litle before her labour thinges of great odour, smell or sauour, for suche thynges (in many mens opinions) attract and drawe by-ward the mother or Matrix, the which is great hynderaunce to the byrth.

Also yf the woman feelee payne onelye in the backe and aboue the nauell, and not vnder, it is a signe of harde labour: lyke wyse if she were wont in times pas- sed to be deliuered with great payne, is an euidence and lykelyhod of great la- bour alwayes in the birth.

Nowe signes and tokens of an expe-
dite and easy deliuerance, be suche as
be contrary to all those that haue ben
rehearsed before. As for example, when
the woman hath ben wont in tymes
passed easily to be deliuered, and that
in her labour she feelee but litle thron-
g

Tokens of
easy deliue-
raunce.

The seconde booke.

oz dolor, oz though she haue great paynes, yet they remayne not styll in the vpper partes, but descende alwayes downewardes to the neather partes oz bottome of the belly.

And to be short, in all painefull and troublesome labours, these signes betoken and signifie good speede and lucke in the labour: vnquietnes, muche stirring of the chylde in the mothers belly, all the thronges and paines combling in the forepart of the bottome of the belly, the woman strong and mightie of nature, such as can wel and strongly helpe her self to the deliuerance of the birth. And againe, euill signes be those, when she sweateth colde sweate, and that her pulces beate and labour ouer soze, and that she her selfe in the labouring faint and solwe, these be vnluckie and mortall signes.

¶ Howe a woman with chylde shall vse her selfe,
and what remedies be for them
that haue hard labour.

Capit. iiii.

TO succour and helpe them that are in such difficult perill of labour, as we haue spoken of before, ye muste obserue, kepe & marke those things that we shal (by the grace of God) shewe you in this Chapter folowynge.

First the woman with chylde muste kepe two diets, the one a moneth before her labour, the other in the very labouring. And aboue al thinges she must eschue & forbear al such occasions which may hynder the birth, to the vttermost of her power, the whiche occasions we rehearsed in the Chapter before. But if there be any such thyng which can not be auoyded, forsomuch as it cometh by nature, or by long continuance and custome in this case: yet ye shal vse some suche remedies, the whiche may somewhat asswage it, molifie it, or make it more easy or tollerable, so that it hinder the birth so much the lesse.

But if it so be, that any infirmitie or disease, swelling, or other apostumatō

chaunce.

How the labour maye be made more easy.

The seconde booke.

chaunce about the mother or the priuie part, or about the vesike or bladder, as the stone, the strangury, and such lyke, the whiche thinges maye cause suche straytnes and coarctation, that vnneth without great and horrible payne, the partie can be deliuered or discharged. In these cases it behoueth such thinges to be looked vnto and cured, before the tyme of labour commeth, by the aduice of some expert Surgion.

Also if the woman be ouermuch constipated or bounde, most commonly she must vse, the moneth before her labour, suche thynges the which may lenifie, mollifie, dissolve, and lose the belly, as apples fryed with suger, taken fastyng in the mornynge, and after that a draught of pure wyne alone, or els tempered with the iuyce of swete and very ripe apples.

Also to eat figges in the mornynge fasting, and at night, loseth well the belly. If these profite not, *Cassia fistula* taken iii. or.iiii. drams one halfe houre before dyner, shall lose the belly without peril.

Againe

The seconde booke. Fol. lviij.

Agayne, in this case she must refrayne from all such thinges as do harden, re-
strayne, and constipat, as meates broy-
led or rosted, and ryce, hard egges, biese,
chestnuttres, and all sowre frutes, and
suche lyke.

Also yf farther necessitie require, she
may reccaue a clyster, but it must be be-
ry gentle and easye, made of a pynt of
the broth of a chikin, or other tender
fleshe, thereto putting so muche course
suger or hony, as may make it reasona-
bly sweete, & halfe a sponesfull of whyte
salt. Or for the pooze woman maye be
made a clyster of a pint of water, wher-
in hath ben sod mallowes or holyoke,
with hony and salt, as befoze. She may
vse also some other easy and temperate
purgation, to molifie and lose her with-
all, as Mercury sodden with flesh in po-
tage, and diuers such other, or els a sup-
positer tempered with sope, larde, or the
yolkes of egges.

And yf it chaunce that (the labour
drawing neare) she waxe faynt or sicke-
lye,

Things to
lose y belly.

with her to comfort
the woman
in her la-
bour.

The seconde booke.

Ipe, then must ye comfort her with good comfortable meate, drinke, holsonie and noble electuaries, and in this time must she do all such thynges the whiche can make her apte and sufficient to her labour, and to vse such thynges the which may lare, open, and mollifie the nature and passage, so that the byrth maye the more freely proceede, and that chiefly in the yonger women. The elder women, for because that those partes in them be somewhat dryer and harder, therefore they must vse hoat and moyst thynges, which haue propriety to lenifie and souple, and that both in meate and drynke, and also in outwarde fomentations, bathynges, suppositoies, and annoyntmentes.

Anoyntments
to souple.

Annoyntmentes wherewith ye may souple the priuie place, be these, Hennes grece, Duckes grece, Goose grece, also oyle Oline, Lineseede oyle, or oyle of Fenegreke, or the viscolite of holyoke, and such other: & for drynke, let her vse good rype wine mixed with water: also
there

there muste be a consyderation in the dieting of the woman, that she maye vse suche thynges the whiche may moysten her, and not make her fatte. Contrarywyle, let her auoyde such thynges the whiche shoulde exicate, drye, constrainne, or coarct her, and that all the moneth before her labour. But about ten dayes before the tyme (yf she feele anye payne or greefe) let her vse euery day to washe or bathe her with warme water, in the whiche also that she tarye not ouerlong in bathyng for weakning of her, and therein let her stande, so that the water come aboute the nauyll a litle, and also seathe in the water Malloes, Holyoke, Camomell, Mercurie, Maydenheyre, Lyneseede, Fenegreke seede, and suche other thynges whiche haue vertue to mollifie and sopele. And yf it be so, that for weakenesse of the body she may not endure this bathyng in warme water, then with a spounge or other cloth dypped in the foresayde bath, let her sokyngly washe her feete, her

Bathes to
lose & genti-
lye to open
the body.

The seconde booke.

her thyghes, and her priuie partes, the whiche thynges shall greatly profite to her. But in such tyme beware ye come not in the common hot houses, for they would cause you to be feeble and faynt, which were yll in this case.

Annoynt-
mentes to
soyle,

And when ye are thus bathed or washed, then shall it be very conuenient for you to annoynt with the foresayde greces and oyles, your backe, belly, nauyl, sydes, and suche places as are neare to the priuie partes. Furthermoze, it shalbe greatly profitable for her to conuey inwarde into the priuie part these foresayd oyles or greces with a sponge, or other thyng made for the purpose, she lying vpright, the middes of her bodye most hyest, so that it maye the better remaine within her, and that chiefly yf the Matrix be drie, other els the partie very leane and spare.

Sweete
fumes.

It shalbe also very profitable for her to suffume the nether places with Muske, Ambre, Gallia Muscata, which put on embres, yelde a goodly sauour, by the
which

Whiche the neather places open them-
selfe, and drawe downewarde.

Also as I sayde before, she must take
good hede to her diet, that she take thin-
ges the which may comfort and streng-
then the body, feeding not ouermuch of
any thing, and to drinke pleasaunt and
well sauering wine, or other drinke, also
moderately to exercise the body in doying
some thing, styring, mouing, goyng,
or standyng, more then otherwyle she
was wont to do, these thinges farther
the byrth and make it the easier, and
this is the maner of diet the which we
aduisse the woman to kepe the moneth
before her labour or longer.

Another dyet there is, the which she
ought to obserue in the tyme of labour,
when the stormes and thzonges begyn
to come on, and the humours which yet
hitherto haue remained about the Ma-
trix or mother collected, now beegynne
to flowe forth, and this maner of dyet
consisteth in two sortes. First that suche
thinges be procured & had in redinesse,

Whiche

what is to
be done whe
the time of
labour is
come.

The seconde booke.

Whiche may cause the byrth or labour to be very easy. Secondly to withstand, defende, and to put awaye so neare as may be the instant and present dolours. And as touching this poynt, it shalbe very profitable for her, for the space of an houre to sit still, then (rysing agayne) to go by and downe a payre of stayres, crying or reachyng so loude as she can, so to styre her selfe.

And also it shalbe verye good for a tyme, to retayne and kepe in her breath, for because that throught that meanes, the guttes and intrayles be thrust together, and depressed downewarde. Also it shalbe very good to receaue some medicine to prouoke the birth, of the which we wyll speake more hereafter.

Nowe when the woman perceaueth the Matrix or Mother to ware laxe or loose, and to be dissolued, and that the humours issue forth in greate plentie, then shal it be meete for her to sit downe leaning backward in maner bypyght. For the which purpose in some regions (as

(as in Fraunce & Germany) the Midwifes haue stoles for the nonce, whiche beyng but lowe, and not hye from the grounde, be made so compassewyle and caue or holowe in the middes, that that may be receaued from vnderneath whiche is looked for, and the backe of the stoole leaning backward, receaueth the backe of the woman: the fashion of the whiche stoole, is set in the begynning of the byrth figures hereafter.

And when the tyme of labour is come, in the same stoole ought to be put many clothes or cloutes in the backe of it, the which the Midwife may remoue from one side to another, according as necessitie shall require. The Midwife her selfe shall sit before the labouryng woman, and shall diligently obserue and wayte, how much, and after what meanes the chylde styreth it selfe: also shall with her handes, fyrst annoynted with the oyle of Almondes, or the oyle of Whyte Lillies, rule and direct every thing as shall seeme best.

Also

The seconde booke.

The Myd-
wyfe must
geue com-
fortable
wordes to
the partie
trauayling.

Also the Mydwyfe muste enstruct and comfort the partie, not onlye refreshing her With good meate and Drynke, but also With Sweete Wordes, geuyng her good hope of a spedefull deliuerance, encouraging and enstomakyng her to patience and tolleraunce, byddyng her to holde in her breath so muche as she may, also strekyng gentilly With her handes her belly aboue the Nauell, for that helpeth to depresse the byrth downeward.

But and yf the Woman be any thing grosse, fat, or fleshy, it shalbe best for her to lye groueling, for by that meanes the Matrix is thrust and depressed downeward, annoynting also the priuie partes With the oyle of white Lillies. And yf necessitie require it, let not the Mydwyfe be afrayde ne ashamed to handle the places, and to relaxe and loose the straighthes, (for so muche as shall lye in her) for that shal helpe well to the more expedite and quicke labour.

But this muste the Mydwyfe aboue
all

The second booke. Fol. lxxii.

all thynges take heede of that she com-
pel not the woman to labour befoze the
byrth come forwarde, and she we it selfe.
For befoze that tyme, all labour is in
bayne, labour as much as ye lyst. And
in this case many tymes it cometh to
passe, that the partie hath laboured so
soze befoze the time, that when she shuld
labour in deede, her might and strength
is spent befoze in bayne, so that she is
not now able to helpe her selfe, and that
is a perrilous case.

To labour
much befoze
the due time
doth but se-
ble the wo-
man, and no
thing profit

Furthermore, when the Secondine
or seconde byrth (in the which the byrth
is wrapped and conteyned) doth once
appeare, then maye ye knowe that the
labour is at hand, wherfoze if the same
secondine breake not of his owne kinde,
it shalbe the Midwyfes part and office,
with her nayles easily and gentellye to
breake and rent it, or yf that maye not
conueniently be done, then rayse bp be-
twene your fingers a peece of it, and cut
it of with a payze of sheares, or sharpe
knyfe, but so that ye hurt not the byrth

Li

With

The second booke.

With the cut. This done, by and by ensueth consequently the flux and flowe of humours, of the whiche I spake before, and then next foloweth immediatly the byrth.

But yf it so chaunce that the Seconde should be cut by the Hydwyfe, and all the Watery part issued and spent before due time & necessitie shoulde require it, so that the priue passage be leste excrate and drye, the byrth not yet appearing, by this meanes the labour should be hindered and letted. In this case ye shall annoynt and molifie that priue passage with the oyle of Whyte Lyllyes, or some of the greases spoken of before, fyrst warmed, and so conueyed into the priue partes, the whiche thynges wyll cause the waye to be slyppery, souple, and easie for the birth to passe. But cheefely in these difficulties should profite the Whyte of an egge, together with the yolke powred into the same place, whiche should cause it to be most slypperye and slydyng, and supplie the
roome

roomie of the natural humidities spent before.

And yf it be so, that the byrth be of a great growth, and the head sticke in the commynge forth, then muste the Mydwyfe helpe all that she may, with her hande fyrst annoynted with some oyle, openyng and enlargyng the way, that the issue may be the freer. Lykewyse must be done yf she beare two children at once. And all this is spoken of the naturall byrth, when that fyrst proceedeth the head, and then the rest of the body ordynately, as ye may see in the fyrst of the byrth figures folowing.

The head
proceedyng
fyrst.

ii. But when the byrth cometh not naturally, then must the Mydwyfe do all her diligence and payne (if it may be possible) to turne the byrth tenderlye with her annoynted handes, so that it may be reduced agayne to a naturall byrth. As for example: Sometyme it chaunceth the chylde to come the legges & both armes & handes downward, close to the sydes fyrst forth, as appeareth

The legges
& both handes
downe,
proceedyng
fyrst.

The second booke.

in the seconde of the byrth figures. In this case the Mydwife must do all her payne With tender handlyng and annoynting to receaue foorth the chylde, the legges beyng still close together, and the handes likewise remaynyng, as appeareth in the sayde seconde figure.

Howbeit, it were farre better (if it may be done by any possible wayes or meanes) that the Mydwife shoulde turne these legges commyng fyrst foorth, by wardes agayne by the bellywarde, so that the head myght descende downe warde by the backe part of the wombe, for then naturallie agayne and without peryll myght it proceede and come foorth as the fyrst.

The thirde
of the byrth
figures.

iii. Agayne sometyme the byrth cometh forth With both legges and feete first, the handes beyng lysted vp aboue the head of the chylde, and this is the perillousst maner of birth that is, as appeareth in the thirde of the birth figures. And here must the Mydwife do what she may to turne the byrth (yf it may be possible)

possible) to the first figure, and yf it wyll not be, then reduce the handes of it downe to the sydes, and so to reduce it into the seconde figure. But yf this also wyll not be, then receaue the feete as they come forth, and bynde them with some fayre linnen cloth, and so tenderly and very softly lose out the byrth tyll all be come forth, and this is a very ieopardous labour.

iiii. Also sometyme the byrth cometh forth with one foote onely, the other being left vpwarde, as appeareth in the fourth figure. And in this case it behoueth the labouryng woman to lay her vpryght vppon her backe, holdyng vp her thyghes & belly, so that her head be the lower part of her bodye, then let the Midwyfe with her hande returne in agayne the foote that cometh out first, in as tender maner as may be, and warne the woman that laboureth to styre and moue her selfe, so that by the mowyng and styryng, the byrth maye be turned the head downeward, and so

The fourth figure.

The second booke.

to make a naturall byrth of it, and then to set the woman in the stoole agayne, and to do as ye dyd in the fyrste figure. But yf it be so, that notwithstanding the mother's styrryng and mouyng, the byrth do not turne, then must the Midwyfe with her hande softlye fetch out the other legge whiche remayned behynde, evermore takyng heede of this, that by handlyng of the chylde, she do not remoue ne set out of theyr place the two handes hangyng downewarde towards the feete.

The fyfth
figure.

v. Lyke wyse sometyme it commeth to passe, that the syde of the chylde cometh forwarde, as appeareth in the. v. figure, and then must the Midwyfe do so, that it may be returned to his naturall fassion, and so to come forth.

The sixth
figure.

vi. Also sometyme the chylde cometh forth the feete forwarde, the legges beyng abroad, as in the. vi. figure, and then must the Midwife see, that the feete and legges may be ioyned together, and so to procede and come forth,
ever

euermore regardyng the handes, as I warned you before.

vii. If it come with one of the knees or both forwarde, as in the .vii. figure, then must the Midwyfe put vp the birth, til such times as the legges & feete come ryght forth, & then to do as afoze.

The .vii.
figure.

viii. When the chylde cometh headlong, one of the handes commyng out and appearyng before, as in the .viii. figure, then let the birth proceede no farther, but let the Midwyfe put in her hande, and tenderly by the shoulders thruste in the birth agayne, so that the hand may be resettled in his place, and the birth to come forth ordynately and naturally, as in the fyrst figure: But yf by this meanes the hande come not to his conuenient place, then let the woman lye vpryght with her thyghes and belly vpwordes, and her head downewordes, so that by that meanes it may be brought to passe, and then bryng her to her seate agayne.

The ryght
figure.

ix. But yf it proceede with bothe

L iiii

handes

The ninth
figure.

The second Booke.

handes forwarde, then muste ye lyke-
wise do as afore, by the shoulders thru-
styng it backe agayne, vntyll suche tyme
as the hands lye close to the sides, & so to
come forth, as appeareth in the .ix. figure.

The .x. fi-
gure.

x. But when it commeth arswarde,
as in the .x. figure may be seene, then
must the Mydwife with her handes re-
turne it agayne, vntyll suche tyme that
the birth be turned, the legges and feete
forwarde: other els, yf it maye be so, it
were best that the head might come for-
warde, and so naturally to proceede.

The .xi. fi-
gure.

xi. And yf so be that it appeare and
come forth first with the shoulders, as
in the .xi. figure, then must ye fayre and
softlye thrust it backe agayne by the
shoulders, tyll suche tyme as the head
come forwarde.

The .xii. fi-
gure.

xii. But when the byrth commeth
foorth with both the handes and both
the feete at once, as in the .xii. figure,
then must the Mydwife tenderly take
the chylde by the head, and returne the
legges vpwarde, & so to receaue it forth.

xiii. And

The second booke. Fol. lxxvi.

xiii. And when it commeth brestward The. xiii.
figure.
as in the. xiii. figure, the legges and handes bydyng behynde, then let the Wydwyfe take it by the feete or by the head, whiche that shalbe moſte apt and commodious to come forthward, returnyng the rest byward, & so to receaue it forth: but if it may be hedling, that shalbe best.

xiiii. Nowe sometyme it chaunceth The. xiiii.
figure.
the woman to haue two at a burthen, & that both procede together headlong, as in the. xiiii. figure, and then must the Wydwyfe receaue the one after the other, but so, that she let not slyppe the one, whylest she taketh the fyrst.

xv. If both come forth at once with theyr feete forthward, then must the Wydwyfe be very diligent to receaue first the one, and then the other, as hath ben shewed before.

xvi. When the one commeth headlong, the other footewyse, then must the Wydwyfe helpe the byrth that is moſte nearest the issue, and it that commeth footelong (if she can) to returne it vppon the
the

The second Booke.

the head, as is spoken of before, takyng ever heede that the one be not noysome to the other in receauyng foozth of eyther of them.

And to be short, let the Wydwyfe often tymes annoynt & mollifie the Waye and passage With some of the foresayde oyntmentes, to make the womans labour so muche the easier, and haue the lesse trauayle and payne. And yf there chaunce to be any Apostume or disease about those places in this tyme, by suche annoyntyng to alaye and swage the payne, so that for the tyme it may be the lesse greefe to the partie, as I spake before also. And for them that be in this case, it shalbe best to lye grouelyng, as I sayde of the grosse, fatte, and fleshy woman.

Remedies and medicines by the which the labour may be made moze tollerable, easy, and without great payne.

Cap. v.

The

The thynges whiche helpe the
 birth & make it more easie, are
 these. First the woman that
 laboureth muste eyther sytte
 groueling, or els byright, leaning back-
 warde, accordyng as it shall seeme com-
 modious and necessary to the partie, or
 as she is accustomed. And in wynter or meanes to
 colde weather, the chamber wherin she helpe & pro-
 laboureth must be warmed, but in som- noke the
 mer or hotte wether, let in the aire to re- birth.
 freshe her withall, lest betwene extreme
 heate and labour the woman faynt and
 sowe. And furthermore, she must be
 prouoked to sneesyng, and that eyther
 with the powder of Eleborus, or els of
 peper. Also the sydes of the woman
 must be stroken downewarde with the
 handes, which thyng helpeth greatly &
 furthereth. And let the Midwyfe al-
 waye be very diligent, prouidyng and
 seing what shalbe necessary for the wo-
 man, annoyntyng the priuities with
 oyle, or other suche greace as I spake of
 befoze, in this fashion.

The

The second booke.

A good mol-
lifying oint-
ment.

Take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes oz Duckes grese, & with that temper two graynes wayght of Saffron, and one grayne of Muske, and there with annoynt the secrete partes. If this profite nothyng, then vse this suffumigation.

Take Myrrhe, Galbanum, Castorium, let those be beaten, and make lyke pylls of them, tempered together with bulles gall: then take a dram of these pylls, and put it on hoate coales, and let the woman receaue the fume and sauour of it vnderneath.

Another perfume: Take yelow hysmistone, myrrhe, Mader, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, of ech lyke much, and temper al those together, making of them pylls, and with those also ye may make fume, to be receaued vnderneath.

Item, the fume of Culuer dung, oz of Haukes dung, by puttyng to of Oppoponacum, is soueraigne for the same. All these fumes open the poores beneath, and causeth nature to be the freer in deliuerance.

Also it is very good to dyp woll in the iuyce of Rue, and the same to conuey into the secretes. Also the powder of Aristolochia rotunda, oz the roote called Bothor martis, Ciclaminus, oz malum terre, oz the seede of Stauisagre, any of these wrapped in woll, and conueyed inwarde, prouoketh and calleth forth the byrth.

Item take Heleborus, Oppoponacum, & wrap them together in wooll, and minister them inwarde, for that will bring forth and prouoke the birth, whether it be algyue oz dead. Also the
rynde

The second booke. Fol. lxxviii.

rynde and barke called Cassia lignea beaten to powder, and tempered with wine and drunken, prouoketh well the byrth.

Item Asa fetida, of the bygnes and wayght of a pease, mingled together with Castorium of the wayght of a dram, beaten together and tempered with wine myxt with water, and so drunken, is very good to prouoke the byrth. Also Canell drunke with wine is very good.

Item, take a scruple of Roses, with the water of the seede of Senegreke, Cicercula, Maydenhayre, all beaten together and sodden, and the oyle of blewefloweredelluce, a small quantitie tempered therewithall, and then geue it to the woman that laboureth, and it shall prouoke the byrth greatly. And Cassia lignea and Asa fetida drunke with wine, be very good for the same.

Also Holyoke sodden in cunduite water and drunken, is soueraigne for the same purpose, and it is verie good for her to washe her in the water in the which this Holyoke is decocte and sodden.

Item, certayne pylls the whiche make the labour easie and without payne.

Take Canell, or Cinamome, and Sauiue, of eche a dram, of Cassia lignea a dram and a halfe, of Myrthe, Aristolochia rotunda, & Costus amarus, of ech a dram, of Storax liquida halfe a dram, and of Oppium the waight of. iiii. graynes, beate these altogether, & fournie them into pylls, and geue vnto the woman two drammes of these pylls with

The second booke.

with two ounces of good olde wine.

Item Saffron and Syler montanum prouoketh the byrth of any lyuyng thyng, yf it be drunken: howbeit to a woman geue neuer passyng a dram at once of Saffron, for greater quantitie should greatly hurt.

Item, take .v. drammes of Sauine, of Rue or hearbe grace one dragma and a halfe, of Juniper beryes two drams, of Asa fetida, Amoniacū, Madder, of eache two drammes, of these make pylls, geuen to the woman in labour, with water in the which is sodden Sauine and Penicrall, or els with the broth of Cicercula, and the iuyce of Rue shall helpe very greatly.

Item, take two drammes of Sauine, of Asa fetida, Amoniacum and Madder, of eache halfe a dram, these temper together in pylls, and geue her with wine one dram of the same.

Item, take of Aristolochia longa, Pepper, and Myrre, of eche lyke muche, confict them together with wine, and make pylls of them, and minister them with an ounce of water of the decoction of Lupines, these pylls be of suche efficacy and strength, that it alleuiateth and repayneth the byrth, it delyuereth the Matrix or Mother from all maner of byrth, be it alpye or dead.

Item, take of whyte Bedellium, Myrre, and Sauine, of eche lyke muche, temper these with Cassia lignea, and Hony, and make pylls of them to the bygnesse of Deason, and of these pylls geue at ech tyme fiue to the labouryng woman,
which

The second booke. Fol. lxx.

whiche be of the same myght and strength, that the other pylls spoken of here next before are.

Item, take of Myrrhe, Castorium, and Storax, of eche one dram, temper them with Hony, and make pylls of it: these for this purpose excel and passe all other, they be of such vertue and strength in operation.

A plaster to prouoke the byrth.

Take wilde Cowarde, and seethe it in water, in the same water temper Myrrhe, the iuyce of Rue, and Barlye meale, so much as shalbe sufficient, stampe these thynges together, and make it plaster wyse, then lay it to the womans bellye betweene the Hauyll and the nether part: This plaster shall helpe marueylously.

And although many other thynges there be which haue vertue and power to prouoke birth, and to helpe it, yet leauyng all suche thynges for breuitie and shortnesse, we haue set here only a certayne, whose efficacie and power shalbe sufficient to this present purpose.

Howe

The second booke.

Chow the secondine oz second birth
shalbe forced to issue forth, if it come not
freely of his owne kynde.

Cap. v.

HEre also sometime it cometh to passe, that the Se-
condine whiche is wont to
come together with the
byrth, remayne and carrye
behynde, and folowe not, and that for
diuers causes. One is, for because per-
adventure the woman hath ben so sore
weakened and feeblished with trauaile,
dolour and payne of that fyrst byrth,
that she hath no strength remaynyng
to helpe her selfe, to the expellyng of the
seconde byrth. Another may be, that it
be entangled, tyed, oz let within the ma-
trix (whiche chaunceth many tymes)
oz that it be destitute of humors, so that
the water be flowen from it sooner
then time is, whiche shoulde make the
places more slipperie and more easie to
passe thorowe: Or els that the places
ouer weeryed with long & sore labour,
for

for payne contract or gather together,
and enclose them selfe agayne, or that
the places be swolne for anguisthe and
payne, and so let the comming forth of
the seconde byrth.

But to be short, of whatsoeuer cause
it be thus stopped, the Bydwylfe in any
wylfe muste fynde such meanes, that it
may be vnloosed and expelled. For o-
therwylfe, great inconueniencie shoulde
chaunce to the partie, & specially suffo-
cation and choking of the Matric, whi-
che also must so much the more be taken
hede to, for because the seconde byrth re-
tayned and kept within, wyl soone pu-
trifie and rot, whereof wil ensue ill noy-
some & pestiferous vapours ascendyng
to the heart, the braynes, & the midriffe,
through the which meanes the woman
shalbe short winded, faynte hearted, of-
ten sounding, and lying without anye
maner of mouyng or styrryng in the
pulses: yea, and many times is playne-
ly suffocated, strangled, and dead of it.
Wherefore that none of these thinges
Mi happen

The seconde booke.

happen, With all diligence and payne it muste be prouided that the secondine be expelled.

Retention
of flowres
for weak-
nesse.

If retention of it come by Weakenesse of the labourer, through long trauayle, then must she be recomforted & strengthened With good comfortable meates and drinckes Which may enheart her, as broath made of the yolcke of Egges, or With good olde Wine, and good fat and tidie fleshe, or Byrdes, Hennes flesh, Capons, Partridge, Piggins and such lyke.

And yf retention of this secondine come, because the place is contract together agayne, eyther els that the Matrix is swollen for long paine, then must be vsed suche thinges to prouoke it out, the Whiche do make the Way slipper, soyle, & easie for it to proceede, With the oyles or ointmentes spoken of before, as oyle of Whyte Lillies, of ^{Maiorum}, and of blew Lillies.

Item, the beries of Juniper, or Galbanu beaten to powder and dronke With luke Warmed Wine, Wyl cause the same to
issue

issue out.

Item, Sothernwood, or els Penitrial sodden in Wyne, and the decoction dronken, is of the same vertue.

Item to suffume the secretes with the perfumes written of before, is good for this purpose, and the vapour of the water in whiche Hallowes, Holyoke, and Beresfoote be sodden, receaued beneath, is lyke good.

Also to washe that partes in water in whiche is sodden bzanne, or to holde a litle bagge full of sodden bzanne to the place, and therewithall to soke the place, is very profitable.

But yf the retention of the secondine come by reason that it is entangled or fastened in some place of the matrix, so that it wyll not resolute ne loose, then make a fume vnderneath of brimstone, Iuie leaues, and Cresses, or els of Cresses and Fygges.

Also of all odoriferous and sweete smelling thinges, as Ambre, Muske, Frankencense, ^{Gallia Muscata,} and confec-
tion

The seconde booke.

tion neare, the which sauoures and perfumes put on the embers, muste be so closely receiued vnderneath, that no part of the smell do ascende to the nose of the Woman. For to the nose shoulde the sauoure of nothing come, but only of such thinges, the which stinke, or haue abhominable smel, as Asa fetita, Castoriū, mans hayre or womans hayre burnt, Peccockes fethers burnt. Item, in this case it shalbe very good to make a perfume vnderneath, of the houe of an asse, which thinges although they be of yll sauour, yet they be of suche nature and efficacie, that they occasionate not onely the secondine, but also dead byrthes to proceede and come forth out of the Matrix.

And in this case also let the Woman holde her breath inwarde so muche as she can, for that shall dryue downward suche thynges as be in the body to be expelled.

Item, let her be prouoked to sneese with the pouder of Eleborus or Pepper put in the nose, holding her mouth and
nose

nose so close as may be.

Also the oyntment whiche is called Vnguentum Basilicon conueyed into y^e matrix, is very good, for it mollifieth the place, and draweth out the secondine perforce, the which so sone as it is expelled, infuse the oyle of Roses into the same matrix. Item Rose water tempered with a quantitie of the powder of Holyoke, and dronke, is good to expell the secondine.

And yf it be so that any parte of the secondine do appeare, let the Midwyfe receaue it tenderlye, loosing it out fayre and softly lest it breake, and if ye doubt that it wil breake, then let the Midwife tye that parte of the which she hath handfast, to the womans legge or foote, not very strayght lest it breake, neyther very laxe lest it slip in agayne, and then cause her to sneese. Nowe yf the secondine tary or sticke, so that it come not quicklye forwarde, then loose it a litle and a litle very tenderly, wreathing it from one side to another, tyll such tyme

The seconde booke.

as it be gotten out, but ever beware of violent and hasty moving of it, lest that with the seconde byrth ye remoue the Matrix also.

And yf in this meane whyle the woman faynt or sowe by reason of greates payne ensuyng of the takyng awaye of this secondine, then must ye minister such thinges to her the which comforte the head & the heart, as be electuaries which are confict with Muske, Ambre, and the confection of precious stones, as Diamargariton, and suche other. Also suche thinges the whiche comfort the stomacke, as Diagalanga, Dia cinamomum, & such lyke, whiche are alwaye in a redynesse at the Apothecaries, the whiche also she shall receaue with wine.

Item to remoue the secondine, & to expel it, take Rue, Horehounde, Sothernwood, and Motherwurte, of eche lyke quantitie, and then take so much of the oyle of Lyllys, as may be sufficient to stepe, moysten, and soke the foresayde hearbes

herbes in, put all this together into a glased potte, couered with suche a couer that it haue a litle hole or vente aboue in the toppe of it, and sette this potte ouer the fyre of coales, so that it boyle a litle whyle, then take it from the fyre, & set it vnder the stoole where the woman sytteth, made for the nonce, hauyng a pype made for the purpose, of the which the one ende ye shall put into the vente or hole of the couer of the pot, and the other ende must the partie receaue into her body, and so to sit closed rounde about with clothes, that no vapour or ayre go forth of the potte, hauyng a fewe coles vnder it to kepe it hotte: and thus sytte the space of an houre or two, tyll suche tyme as the seconde inoue or begyn to proceade of his owne kynde.

And yf it be so that ye profite not this wayes, yet then laye this plaster on the belly betweene the nauyll and the secretes, of the which we shal speake

¶ hereafter,

The seconde booke.

hereafter, the which is of suche operati-
on and efficacie, that it expelleth dead
birthes. If for al this y^e secondine come
not forwarde, then leaue it, and vse no
more medicines ne remedies to that
purpose, but let it alone, for within few
dayes it wyll putrifie and corrupt, and
dissolue vnto a watery substance, thicke
lyke bryne or other sex mixed with wa-
ter, and so issue forth. Howbeit, in the
meane whyle it wyll put the woman to
great paine in the head, in the heart, &
in the stomacke, as we touched before.

Chowe that many thinges chaunce to
the women after their labour, and howe
to auoyde, defende, or to remedie the
same. Cap. vi.

Is also to be vnderstanded
that many times after the de-
liueraunce, happeneth to wo-
men other y^e feuer or ague, or
swelling, or inflation of the body, other
tumblyng in the belly, or els commoti-
on or settelyng out of order of the Mo-
ther

ther oꝛ Matrix . Cause of the Whiche
thynges , is sometimes lacke of due and
sufficient purgation and clensing of the
flowres after the birth , oꝛ els contrary-
wyle overmuch flowyng of the same,
which soze doth Weaken the Woman.
Also the great labour and styꝛring of
the Matrix in the byꝛth.

Then as oft as it commeth foꝛ lacke
of due purgation of the flowres , there
muste be ministred suche thynges the
Whiche may prouoke the same, Whether
it be by medicines taken at the mouth,
oꝛ by lotion and Washing of the feete, oꝛ
by fumes, oꝛ odour, oꝛ eniplastration, oꝛ
by decoction of herbes seruing to that
purpose, oꝛ els by oyntmentes, and such
other thynges , accoꝛdyng as the person
oꝛ the perill doth require, of the Whiche
thynges felwe oꝛ no Women be ignoꝛant.
And ye must take diligent hede that she
be exactly and vtterly purged, to this be
agreable all suche simples the Whiche
prouoke vrine , and open the vaynes,
makyng free way foꝛ the blood to passe
and

The seconde booke.

and sende the humours and matter downward, as Motherwurt, Alarum, Sauine, Peniriall, Parcely, Charuyll, Annis seede, Fenell seede, Juniper berries, Rue, Bay berries, Germaunder, Valerian, Tyme, Cinamome, Spike-narde, and such other. Al those things as they do prouoke and cause brine, so do they also prouoke & cause the flow-ers to depart. howbeit, as neare as ye can, vse none of these things without the counsaile of an experte Phisition, lest whylest ye helpe one place, ye hurt another. Also to sneese, helpeth muche to this matter, & to holde in the breath, enclosing the nose and the mouth. Also fumigation made of the eyes of salte fyses, or of the houe of a horse vnderneath, prouoketh the flowres. If ye profite not by this meanes, then being able to beare it, let her blood in the vaine called Saphina, vnder the ancles of the feete, for this prouoketh flowres cheefely of all other thynges.

Lykewyle do, yf the woman haue the
ague

ague after her labour, for that cometh of like cause by retention of the flowres, and in the feuer let her vse to drinke Water, in the which is decorte Barley beaten, or Cicer and barley together, or water in whiche be sodden Tamarindi, or whay of mylke, and let her eate a cullis made of a Cocke, and sweete Pomegrates, for these thinges do prouoke the flowres, and mittigateth the immoderate heate, refreshing greatly the body, loosyng and opening suche thinges the which befoze were constrict and clud-
 dered together.

If the body after labour do swell and inflate, then let her drinke water, in the which is sodden Cicer & Cummin, beaten together.

Item good olde wine with the electuarie called Diaciminum, or of Trochiskes of Alkechengie, otherwyle called Halicacabus.

Also in this case a clyster made of suche thynges the which do banquishe and expell ventosities and wyndynesse, as Annis seede, fenell seede, Rue the hearbe and the seede, Bay berries,
 Cum-

For the ague in women with chylde.

The seconde booke.

cimmin. &c. Also a pessarie or suppositar made for that part of Aristolochia Rotunda, Squinanium, Storax Liquida, Dorenicum, Zeduaris.

Agayne, yf the woman after her labour haue frettyng and gnawynge of the guttes and payne of the Matrice, and other secrete partes there about, then let her vse the vapour and fume of suche thinges the whiche haue vertue to mittigate, swage, and alay the payne, as Mallowes, Helyoke, Fenegreke, Comin, Camomell, and Sauine. Of these also make emplasters and bagges, the whiche may be applied to the payned places.

Also to annoynt þe places with Oleum sesaminū (yf it were to be had) or with oyle of sweete Almondes. And yf no greate heate do abounde in the woman, she maye drinke Triacle, or Trifera magna, with wine in whiche is decoct Motherwort or Huggewort.

Also agaynst payne in the priuie partes, take Peniriell, Policaria, sixe leaues of baye tree, seeth them together, and receaue the vapour vnderneath closely.

Item, take Rue, red Motherwort, Sothernwood, beate them together, and temper them with the oyle of Peniriell, and put all together into a pot, and set it ouer the fyre a whyle tyll it be somewhat sodden together, and then take it of agayne, & put it into a litle rounde linnen bagge made for the purpose, the whiche with these hearbes in it, ye shall conuey into the secretes.

Item, take Camomel and Lyne, of eche lyke much

The second booke. Fol. lxxvi.

much. iiii. handfulls, bray them together, and seethe them with white wine, and then put it in a rounde bag of linnen, as before was done, and conuay it into the womans priuie partes.

Item, let her drinke for the same purpose, two graynes of muske with wine.

Item, take whyte Onions, and couer them vnder the hote ashes, the whiche when they be well roasted, beate them together with freshe Butter vn salted, and make it in maner of a plaster, and then put it in a linnen bagge, and conuay it into the places, as before: in the meane whyle perfumyng the priuie partes with whyte frankencence and Storax.

If it be so that the woman be beryed about the backe and loynes after her labour, take Camomell and Muggewort, of eche two handfulls, of Wormewood, Sothernwood, of eche one handfull, or Motherwort three handfulls, of Cinamome and Nutmegges beaten small halfe an ounce, decoct all these thinges together, and in the water of this decoction beyng warme, dyp a sponge or other linnen clothes, fomenting, sohyng, and strekyng the backe with the same, and so do oftentymes, or els put all these foresayde herbes together sodden in a bagge, and lay it plaster wyse to the backe.

If this profite not, take oyle of Rardine, oyle of whyte Lillies, of eche an ounce and an halfe, to the whiche put a dram of Nutmegges beaten to small powder, with this annoynt the backe.

Item, take oyle of Anete, oyle of Camomell,
of

The seconde booke.

of eche an ounce, Oyle of whyte Lillies two ounces, of Ware two drams, disolue all these together ouer the fyre, and therewith annoynt the backe.

What remedies whē the flowres issue more abundant, lye then nedeth.

But yf after the labour the flowres issue more vehemently, and in greater aboundaunce then they shoulde, to the great esseoblyshing of the woman, and inducing of much langour and paynesfulnes, then fyrst shal ye note wherebypon it cometh: for the cause knowen, the disease may the more redyly be recured, and causes of it be diuers, but mooste especiall those that folowe, that is to say: Of much aboundaunt superfluous blood contayned in the whole body, or of much commixtion of the colericke humour and the blood together, by the whiche the blood is ensired and chaufed, and so distendeth, openeth, and setteth abroade the vaynes whiche descend to the Matric.

Also the blood beyng very thyn and waterish, for so it penetrateth, thrilleth, and issueth forth the sooner. Also yf the vaynes be very large, and receiue much blood,

blood, for in that case they sende forth the more agayne. And yf the Matrix be vnmightie and weakened, the baynes lyke wyse are weake and large, so that they can not retayne nor withhold the blood.

Also if the body of the woman, or the outwarde partes be very dense, close, & compact together, so that the outward pores be contract and shutte, in suche wyse that no vapours or sweete can issue out at them, then this shall cause the yll humours (whiche other wyse woulde passe through the pores in sweete) to remaine within the bodye, and there to engender and encrease great fluxe and aboundaunce of matter, whiche proceedeth with the flowres, and augmenteth the quantitie of them.

Also yf the baynes of the Matrix be (by some chaunce) open and flow forth, as yf the Matrix be perished or other wyse viciate: Or yf it chaunce that the woman haue hadde a fall, or hath ben thruste, or beaten, by all and any
of

The seconde booke.

of this meanes may come this inordinate fluxe of flowres.

Good coun-
sell to the
woman.

Nowe seyng then that it ensueth by so manyfold occasions and causes, it shalbe mete that women in this case be nothing ashamed ne abashed to disclose their minde vnto expert Physitians, shewing them euery thyng in it, as they knowe wherebpon it shoulde come, so that the Physition vnderstandyng the womans mynde, may the sooner by his learnyng and experience consyder the true cause of it, and the very remedye to amende it. And many thinges there be which ceasse and restrayne this ouermuch flowyng of flowres, both Electuaries, Confections, Trochiskes, Pouders, Clysters, Oodours, Suffumigations, Bathes, Plasters, and Oyntmentes, of whiche for the loue of women I wyl here set forth the most principall and best.

First then to stinte and restrayne the outrageous fluxe of flowres, it shalbe very good to binde the armes strayght and strongly, and not the feete or handes, as some vnwysse men do
teache

teache, and then to sette a ventose bore, or cup-
pyng glasse with fyre (which is called boryng)
vnder the breastes, without any scarification,
laying also linnen clothes dypped in vineger
on the belly betweene the Nauyll and the secre-
tes, conueying also into the places suche thynges
whiche haue vertue to restrayne blood, as the
flowre and rynde of Pomegranate, Ambre, Terra
Sigillata, Bole Armeniacke, Sanguis Draconis,
Hematites, the red Rose, whyte Frankencense, &
galles, all those things, or as many of them as ye
can conueniently get, beate them to powder in
lyke portion, and temper them with redde wine,
makynge of it a plaster, the whiche so tempered,
put into a lytle rounde bagge, the quantitie of a
mans thumbe, the whiche she shall put into the
priue partes.

¶ Item another plaster, to be ministred lyke wyse.

Take of the blood stone called Emathites, Bole
Armeniack, of ech halfe an ounce, Sanguis draco-
nis, Licium, of eche two drams, Karabe, otherwise
named Ambre, the cuppes of Acornes, Cipres
tree Nuttes, flowres of Pomegranade, of eche
one dram, of the scales of Iron one draunne and
a halfe, Turpentine and Bitche lyke quantitie,
or so muche as shalbe sufficient to make a softe
and somewhat liquid plaster, beate and braye
all these together, temperyng it to a plaster, and
then do with it, as ye dyd with the other before.

¶ An oynment for the same purpose.

¶ Take oyle Martine, oyle of Roses, of eche
four ounces, Karabe, the scrappyng of Iuery, the
scrappyng

The second booke.

Scrappng of a goates horne, redde Corall, Terra sigillara, whyte frankencense, of eche (beyng well and fynely beaten) two drams, of whyte ware two ounces: all those tempered together, make them in an oymntment, and there with annoynte the wombe and the secretes.

¶ A bath concernng the same.

Take Wormewood, Plantane the more and the lesse, the toppes of Vaines, freshe braunches of wyld Mulberies, or of the bramble, vnrype Damassons, Sloes, or Bolasse, wyld Peares, Medlers or Whispylles, of eche three handfulles, of red rose leaues two handfulles, of Basies, of all sortes of Thyslles, of eche two handfulles, of Cinckfoyle the leaues and rootes, Tormentyll the rootes, Colubyne, of eche an handfull: Also of Acorne cuppes a sawcer full, of Gaules, of Acornes pyllled, of Bursa pastoris, of eche two handfulles, beate all these to powder, cuttyng and brusyng that that will not be beaten to powder, and seethe them together in rayne water, or els in water in the which ten or twelue burnt flynt stones haue ben quenched. This done, let the woman bath her selfe in this water bp to the Naryll, and when she commeth forth of the bath, geue her to drynke two drammes of Electuarium Athanasie, or Miclete, with Plantane water, or yf she be sore thirstie, with red wyne.

And lyke wyse ye maye geue to her of these electuaries that folowe. Take good olde roose Sugar two ounces, of red Corall, burnt Iuery, Bole Armeniacke, of eche two drams, of Hematites

The second booke. Fol.lxxix.

eites three drammes: beate all these thynges together, temperyng it with the roose Sugar, and let her receaue of it in the Mornyng and Euenyng, at eche time one dramme, with. vi. spoonefulles of Plantane water, or els the water of Bursa pastoris,

Item, take of the stone Emathites, and rub it on a Barbers whetstone, called a hone, tyll the hone seeme red, then washe it agayne from the hone with Plantane water, and so do oftentymes, bntyll thou haue a good quantitie of it, and euery Mornyng let the woman drynke. iiii. oz. v. spoonefulles of the same water.

Furthermore, there be at the Apothecaries Trochiskes, whiche helpe greatly in this case, as the Trochiskes of Carabe, or Ambre, and the Trochiskes of Bole armeniacke, whiche must be ministred a dramme or more of eyther of them, with. iiii. oz. v. spoonefulles of Plantane water.

Who that requireth farther in this matter, let them aske counsaile of the Physitions.

Nowe yf it be so that there be engendred any Apostume or other disease in the priuie places after her labour, then muste the Apostumes and diseases be clensted, purged, and healed, the payne & ache of it mitigated & swaged with the iuyce of the berryes or leaues of Night-

R ij

shade,

The second booke.

Shade, and the iuyce of Plantane, also the oyle of Roses, so that all those thynges be tempered together and the places annoynted therewith.

Item other Wyle. Take the white of an egge, womans mylke, the iuyce of Purslane, and temper al these together, and conuey it to the diseased place.

These medicines do refrigerate & coole the vehement heate wont to be in Apostuines. As for the rest, howe to open, drie, and cleanse such Apostumations, ye must consult with some Physition or expert Surgian.

Many tymes also it chaunceth that the fundement gutte commeth forth both in man and woman, and specially in women in this busines, by reason of theyr great labour and stryuyng with them selfe: Wherefore in this case it is the Wydwifes parte, with her hande warmed and wet in whyte wyne, to reduce it backe into his place agayne, the which yf she can not by this meanes, for because peraduenture it be swollē, then
let

let her dissolue butter in Whyte Wyne warmed, and therein dip Woll, with the which wrappe the same gutte a whyle, so doyng often tymes tyll it be swaged, that it may be returned in agayne. And ye may vse in the steade of Whyte Wine, luke warme milke.

And when it is thus returned and reduced into his place: Take ware, and melt it together with Masticke or whyte frankencense: then spreade it vpon linnen plasterwyle, and laye it ouer the place where it came forth, byndyng it to with a linnen cloth or roller, for partyng of. And let this be done thus so often as the goeth to stoole, after that she hath done, vntyll such tyme that it be so settled within, that it come no more out.

And yf ye wyll not occupie ware, then dyppe woll in the oyle of Masticke, or of Spyke Hardy, and laye it vnto the place ouer the fundement, byndyng it fast vpon the place, as before.

Item another way. Washe and soke the gut with the water in whiche is decocte and sodden such thynges which ericate, dye, and constrayne or combynde: as Galles, Cipres nuttes, flowres of Pomegranade, Ambre, Masticke, Frankencense, Sanguis draconis: and when it is wel washed and soaked with this water, then take the powder of an Hartes horne burnt, and strue it rounde about the gutte, and so restore it agayne

The second booke.

into his place.

Agayne, sometyme it commeth to passe, that after the womans labour the Matrix is remoued out of his place, and appeareth forth: Then let it be washed and soaked with the water in which be sodden these thynges folowynge.

Take of Cipres nuts, Spyke narde, Balauſtium, Acorne cuppes, of eche an ounce, of Mespylles, and bnrype wyld Peares, and bnrype Apples, Plummes, and Damsons or Bollasse, of eche a handefull. And suche of those as be to be powdered, beate them to powder, and the rest diuide and cut them small, then seeth them all together in rayne water, or els in water in the which Steele beyng redde hotte, hath ben oftentymes quenched, and in the same water let the partie bathe her vp to the Hauyll: or els dyppe a sponge or a Locke of woll in it, and therewith washe and soke the same Matrix oftentymes. Then euer with a fayre cleane linnen cloth wpe it cleane agayne, and strewe vpon it the powder folowynge, beaten very small, and searsed through sylke.

Take of Frankencense, Carabe, Galles, Balauſtium, Cipres nuttes, Alome, Antimoni, Bole Armeniacke, Masticke, of eche lyke muche, beate all these to verie fyne powder, and strewe the Matrix with it, then tenderly reduce it into his place agayne with warme linnen clothes, byndynge it
vp.

The second booke. Fol. lxxxj.

bp. But yf so be that the Matrix be swollen, so that by this meanes it wyll not be restored to his naturall place agayne, then dissolue butter in white wine, as ye dyd before, and with the same soke it, vnto such tyme as it be swaged, and then reduce it.

Agayne, sometyme it chaunceth that the Womans Nauyll through labour is dissolued, so that it openeth it selfe: then make a small tent of fine linnen, and annoynt it with this oyntment that followeth, & the same put into the Nauyll.

Remedies
for the wo-
mans nauil,
when it o-
peneth it
selfe for
payne in the
labour.

Take whyte frankencense, and beate it to powder, and then temper it with the whyte of an egge, so that it be after the maner of liquid honye, with this annoynt the Nauyll within and without, annoyntyng also the tente, the which being put in the hole of the Nauyl, binde some cloth ouer it to kepe it in his place.

Item, many tymes it chaunceth that thorow the great difficultie & thronges of labour, the priuie part and the fundament become one, by reason of rupture and breakyng of the same parte in the delyueraunce of the chylde, and that by that meanes the Matrix descendeth and issueth downe, the whiche thyng chaunceth sometymes, by reason that

Howe that
sometyme
the priuie
part & fun-
dament be-
come one.

The second Booke.

the same place is very narrowe, and also tender, and the byrth bygge & of great growth, so that it proceedeth with such violence, that it breaketh the way before it.

When this mishappe falleth, fyyste washe and soke the Matrix, and also reduce it to his place agayne, after the maner as I tolde you here immediately before: then heale this bracke & wounde by sowyng of both sydes of it together agayne with a sylken threede, as Chirurgions do other woundes, and if that lyke ye not, then may ye cure it otherwyse without sowyng, thus.

Take two lyttle peeces of linnen cloth, eche of the length of the wounde, and in breadth two fyngers broade, spreade the lytle clothes with some fast cleauyng plaster, the which wyll cause the cloutes to stycke fast where they shalbe set: then fasten them, the one on the one syde of the rift, the other on the other syde, so that nothing appeare betweene the peeces of linnen in the myddes of them, but only the clyfte and ryfte of the wounde in the breadth of a strawe. Then (this done) sowe the sydes of the linnen together close, as before I byd you to sowe the skyn, and when they be thus styched together, lay a lytle

The second booke. Fol. lxxxii

lytle liquid pitche or tarre by on the seame. And this done, the lappes and sydes of the wounde vnder the linnen plaster wyll growe together agayne and heale, and then may ye remoue your plasters.

¶ Item another way.

Take Camfely dreyed, and beate it to powder, also a lytle quantitie of Cinamome beaten to powder, ioyne them together, and strow of this powder into the wounde, and without fault it shall heale.

¶ Of aboꝛcementes, or vntymely byrthes, and the causes of it, and by what remedies it may be defended, holpen and eased.

Cap. vii.



Boꝛcement, or vntymelye birth, is when the woman is deliuered before due season, and before the fruite be ripe (as in the.iii.iiii. or v.moneth) before the byrth haue lyfe: and sometymes after it hath lyfe it is delyuered before it stirre, being by some chaunce dead in the mothers wombe. Of the whiche thynges there be many and diuers causes.

Many causes of vntymely byrthes.

Fyrst, sometymes the mouth of the Matrix

The second Booke.

Matrix is so large and ample, that it can not conueniently close it selfe together, neither containe the feature oz conception: Or els it may be so corrupted & infected With viscos, slymye, fleumatycke, and other Waterythe humours, that the cavitie oz holownesse thereof is thereby made so slypperye, that the feature conceaued can not there remayne, but slyppeth and slydeth foozth agayne. Also sometymes the Matrix is apostumated and soze, so that for payne it can not contayne the conception.

Item, sometymes the Cotilidons, that is the baynes by the Which the conception and feature is tyed and fastened in the Matrix (thorowe the Which also the feature receaueth nourishment and foode, as is declared in the fyrst booke) be stopped With viscos & yll humours, or els swollen by inflasion, so that they breake, by the Whiche meanes, the feature destitute of his wont nourishment, perysheth and dyeth, & that most commonly in the second and thirde moneth after.

The second booke. Fol. lxxxiii.

after conception. wherfore Hippocrates sayth : All such women whiche be impregnate or conceaued, being of a meane state in theyr body (that is to say, nether to fatte or grosse, ne to spare or leane) yf it chaunce any suche to aboꝛce in the seconde or thirde moneth (no other euident cause appearyng) knowe ye for certaine, that it ensueth for because the Costilidons be opplete, stopped and stuffed with yll humours, and be swollen and puffed therewith that they breake: and so consequentelye the feature dyeth for fault of foode.

Item, aboꝛcement sometyme cometh by reason that some of the places about the Matrix be diseased and greeued, as yf *Intestinum rectum*, whiche is called the fundement gut, be vlcerate, hauyng the pyles or Hemorroides, or the visick or bladder be swollen or encūbred with the stone, the strangury, or other euil. In these cases through the great labour & paine the which the partie hath in endeuoring & enforcing her self other to

Abocemēt
by reason of
some greife
about the
Matrix.

The second booke.

to stoole, or to make water, be engendred great motions downward, whereby manye tymes the handfastnes of the Cotilidons is broken.

Aborcement
by Tenas-
mus.

Also aborcement maye come of a disease called Tenasmus, the which is when one hath euer great desyre and luste to the stoole, and yet can do nothyng, nevertheless the parties greatlye do enforce and payne them selfe to it. And as Hipocrates saith, the pregaunt woman which hath Tenasmus, for the most parte abhorceth, that is to say, bringeth forth her chylde out of tyme.

Aborcement
through the
cough.

Item the cough, if it be greuous, causeth the same. And as the forenamed excellent Philition sayth, suche as are very spare and leane, and brought low, euermore lyghtly do aborze, for because that all the meate and foode the whiche they receaue, turneth to foode, nourishment, and restauration of theyr owne bodyes, and so is the conception destitute of foode, wherfore necessarylye it dyeth.

Item

Item, this chaunce also commeth by ouermuch bleedynge at the nose, or other where, or issuyng of the flowres immoderately. And so sayth Hypocrates, yf the woman yeeld flowres after her conception, it can not be that the feature do long proue, the whiche saying must be vnderstande, yf they flowe vehemently, or that the partie be weake and verye spare, or yf it be after the thyrde moneth, for it may be well, that in the fyrst and seconde moneth flowres may issue, and yet no daunger. For as yet lytle foode and noyrishment satisfieth the conception for the smalenesse thereof.

Item, to be let blood may be the cause of abozement, whiche must be vnderstande, in suche as haue but lytle store of blood: but such as haue great copie and plentie of blood, may without any peryll (if any vrgent cause require it) be let blood, so that it be after the fourth moneth, and before the seventh. Howbeit, I would that none should be let blood, except some great and wayghtie cause
dyd

The second booke.

dyd require it.

Item, it may come by taking of some strong purgation before the fourth moneth, and after the seventh moneth.

And yf it be so that any necessitie do so require that she must needes receaue a purgation, let it be done betweene the fourth and the seventh moneth after the conception, for then may it be with least peryll. And see that the purgation be very gentle and easie.

Also this may come by reason of a continuall fluxe, be it blooddye or other wyse, and speciallye yf the woman be weake & spare, for by that meanes the conception is greatly weakened and perished. Also ouermuch vometyng may be cause of abozement, for by ouermuch galpyng and reachyng vpwardes, the Cotilidons may be broken, and so the feature to peryshe.

Item, ouermuch famine or hunger and also sharpe and feruent sycknesse may be the cause thereof, as the pestilence, apostume in the brest, and sodayne pallie,

palsye, the falling sycknesse, &c. Also ouermuch drunkennes, and excesse feeding and surfetting, by the whiche the birth is suffocate and strangled in the belly, and the foode corrupt for lacke of due digestion.

Item, if the birth be sicke by any outward or inward cause, or yf the Season in the which the feature is conteyned, do breake before his tyme, and the humours and waters of the same flow & issue forth, causing the place to be slippery, and so the birth to slide away vntimely: Or yf the mother haue taken very great cold, or ouer great heat, whiche weakeneth both mother and chylde.

And therefore ought women with chylde to excheue much bathing or going to the hot houses in theyr teeming, for that may do hurt thre wayes.

Fyrste, that it kyndleth or enflameth the ayre or breath conteyned in the body, and so styfleth the chylde, and sometime the mother to.

Secondly, that it relaxeth, dissolueth, & looseth

The second booke.

looseth the Cotilidons, and so maketh the byrth to issue forth. Thirdly, that the bitter heate of the bath, encreaseth the inwarde heate of the body: In so much, that the byrth not beyng able to sustayne and abyde the heate, naturally proceedeth for refrigeration and cooling: but in the tyme or about the tyme of labour, she may vse bathes, as I declared before, for the redyer and more expedite delyneraunce.

Cause of a
bozement
by mutati
on of the
weather.

Item, the intemperancie and mutation of the ayre and weather, may be cause of abozement. For (as Hypocrates writeth) Whensoeuer the Wynter is hot and moyste, and the spryng tyde after colde & drye, such women in that spryng tyde may soone & of a lyght cause haue abozement: Or yf they abozce not, yet they shalbe deliuered with great payne, and the birth shalbe very weake & sicklye, so that it shall dye strayght, or yf it dye not by and by, it shal proue but very slenderly. The cause of the which thing is this.

For

For when that suche wynteryng chaunceth, the hoate and moyste weather heateth & moysteth the womans body, & by that the bodye is opened, vnloosed, & resolved, no lesse then though she were euery day bathed, and vppon this when the springe time commeth, yf it be colde and drye, findyng the body open and vnloosed after suche sorte, the colde entereth and pearceth the bodye the sooner & the more vehemently: and the byrth feeling the sodayne colde and chaunge of weather, pineth away, and dieth in the Mothers belly, or anone after it is deliuered: or yf it lyue, it lyketh not, nor proueth not, and great payne shall it be to kepe life in it.

Item, aborcement may happen by ouer muche styring of the body in labouryng, daunsyng, or leaping, or by some fall or thrust agaynst some wall, or beatyng, or by some sodain anger, feare, dread, sorowe, or some sodayne and vnlookedfor ioy. Thus haue I rehearsed all the causes of the whiche moste com-
Di monly

The seconde booke.

monly maye ensue abozcement oz untymely byrth, the whiche no doubtte is much more grieve and payne to the woman, then the very naturall labour, for such thinges as chaunce to man oz woman contrarye to nature, oz before nature doeth require it, is farre greater greefe, then the same happenyng and comming in his due season.

Signes whereby ye may foresee abozcement.

Tokens to
foresee a
bozrement.



When the woman shall labour before her tyme, these signes are wont to go before. First her brests which before were hole, sounde, & full, shall begin to waxe lesse, to fall, and to flagge, and then ever for the most part abozcement foloweth. But if it be so that she go with two children at once, if one of the brestes swage, whiche before was in good lyking, the other remaynyng sounde and safe, then loke of what side the brest is of, and the chylde of that syde is in perill. wherfore Hippocrates wyrteth, yf the ryght brest flake oz flagge, the masculine oz male

male byrth is in perill: yf the left, the female byrth, because that for the moſte part when there be two at once, the one is maſculine, and the other feminine: the man lyeth in the ryght ſyde, and the woman in the left moſt commonly.

Alſo another ſigne of abozement is, when the woman hath great paynes and dolours of the Matrix, & that ſhe begyn to waxe red in the face, and all partes of the bodye to ſhake & tremble, as though it were in a feuer, or the palſey in the head. Item when ſhe feeleth great ache in the inner part of the eyes toward the braines, the reſt of the body taken as it were with a Werynes without any outward apparant cauſe, why theſe thinges portende and ſignifie abozement to be at hande, ſpecially yf at the ſame time the flowres iſſue alſo.

Item, yf the womans body do ſwell and inflate with a certayne hardeneſſe or ſtyfeneſſe, and that ſhe feele ſitches, and as it were ventofitie or wynde, runnyng from one ſyde of the bodye

The seconde booke.

to the other, and yet the belly not withstanding, beyng nothyng the more ponderous or wayghtie, and that the same inflation do perlist and continue anye Whyle, the Woman taking and eatinge suche thinges whiche haue vertue to discusse and vanquish ventositie and Wyndynesse: this thyng I saye doeth betoken perill of abozement through ventositie and inflation, and that chiefly about the thirde or fourth moneth after the conception.

Thus haue I sufficiently declared euident and sufficient signes, whereby may be prouided and foreseene the abozement before it come. Nowe Wyl I shew you the remedies wherby it may be auerted and let.

Remedies
whereby to
auoide a
bozement.

The cheefe remedie to auoide abozement is, to shun all such thinges which may be cause of it, the whiche I haue competently entreated of already: but yf ye feare abozement, because that the mouth of the matrix be ouer ample and large,

The seconde booke.

that the Matrix or other places about be infected, exulcerated, or apostumate, or hauyng the stone or strangury, and suche other thynges: then aske and vse the aduise of some well learned medicine, and he shall shewe you howe all thynges shalbe recured.

If agayne ye feare aborcement because the partie is very weake and low brought, then let her feede on such thynges the whiche moysten and nouryshe wel, or fatten y^e body, as Capons fleshe, Kid, Lamme, young Cleale, Partridge, and such other.

Agayne, yf the woman be taken with any sharpe and fell disease, then let her be cured of the same as shortlye as can be, with such thynges the which appertayne to the curyng of such disease: or yf she haue susteyned any long famine or hunger, then let her be fedde with good meates and drinkes moderately taken: and yf she haue surfetted by ouermuch eatynge and drynkyng (as now a dayes most commonly people do) then
let

let her abstayne for a tyme, and if it may be convenientlye done, let her receaue some easy and gentle medicine, whiche maye alleuiate and lyghten her of her surfetting burthen, especially by vomitting, for the whiche purpose, geue her halfe a pynt of water luke warme, wherin hath ben sodden two sponesfuls of clarified hony, and then afterwarde yf it come not of it selfe, with her synger or with a fether put into her throte, let her prouoke her selfe to vomite.

Nowe yf it be so that the woman abounde in blood, then shall it be very good a litle to let her blood, both for her selfe, and also for the birth, whiche thowwe ouer muche aboundaunce of it, myght happen to be suffocated & strangled: of the whiche thing also I haue spoken largely before.

Furthermore, yf the woman feare abozement, by reason of continuall cough, or ouermuche vomite and parbreakyng, or the fluxe, or of y^e disease called Tenasmus, or of ouermuche issuyng

The seconde booke.

of blood, Whether it be by the nose, or other partes of the body, aske the aduise of a Physitian for remedie, yf for the fragilitie, tendernesse, and bracke of the secondine, she feare this abozement, for because that in this case the secondine shall not be able to holde and contayne the byrth. As for this, there is no other medicine to defende it, but only that the partie take heede that she hurt not her selfe by ouermuch mouing or stirryng, as by labouryng, daunsing, runnyng, standyng, faste goyng, or carryng of ponderous and wayghtie thinges, or lystyng of the same. And to be short, let her with all warynesse take heede and be diligent that she excheue and abstayne from all suche thynges the which myght cause and induce abozement.

Of dead birthes, and by what signes or tokens it may be knowen, and by what meanes it may also be expelled. Cap. ix.

If I shalbe nowe conuenient for vs to speake of dead birthes, howe it shalbe knowen that they be dead, and howe they may be expelled from the mother.

Signes to know whether the childe be dead in the mothers wombe.

¶ Signes then that the byrth is dead in the mothers wombe, be these.

i. Fyrst, yf the mothers brestes do suddenly flake, as I touched before.

ii. If it moue it selfe no more, beyng wont before to styre.

iii. If when the mother turneth her from the one side to y other, she feele it falling from thone side to the other like a stone or a dead wayght.

iiij. If her belly and nauyll begyn to ware colde, which before was wont to be temperately hotte.

v. If any stynkyng and fylthye humours flowe from the Matrix, and cheefely after some fell disease.

vi. If the womans eyes ware holow, & that her colour chaunge from whyte to swart and dunne colour, and that her eyes and nose ware astonyed, and haue

The seconde booke.

haue not their ryght vse, and her lippes
waxe wanne.

vii. If beneath the Pauell and about
the secrete partes she feele great throng
& payne, the colour of her face chaunge
yng into worse and worse, otherwyle
then it was wont to do.

viii. If she haue appetite to eate suche
thinges whiche be agaynst nature, and
not wont to be eaten or drunken.

ix. If she be in her sleepe vexed with
bayne and terrible dreames.

x. If she be payned continuallye with
the strangurye, or that she enforce her
selle much to the stoole, and with al her
power, and yet can not do any thing.

xi. If her breath begin to stynke, the
whiche thing lightly happeneth two
or thre dayes after the birth be dead.

xii. If her handes put into very warme
water, and then layde on the womans
belly, and the childe stirre not, is a signe
that it is dead.

Of all these signes nowbe, the more
that come together of them at one
time

tyne and in one person, the surer may ye be that the birth is dead, the whiche beyng once dead, all diligence muste be hadde that it may be expelled out of the womans body.

But here must ye see agayne whether it may be expelled, the Mothers lyfe saued or no: for sometime it chaunceth that the Mother dyeth withall, and sometimes the Mother doth well and prospereth.

Whether the Mother shalbe in perill withall, or no, by these thinges shall ye knowe. If the woman beyng in the labour sowne or feare, as though she were in a traunce: if her remembraunce fayle her, and she waxe feeble and scant able to moue or stirre her selfe: yf she (called with a loude voyce) can answer nothyng at all, or els verye litle, and that very softly, as though her voyce began to fayle her: if she be inuaded or taken among in the labouryng with conuulsion or chynkelyng together: if she refuse or cannot broke meate:

yf

To knowe
whether the
mother shal
be in perill
or no.

The seconde booke.

yf her pulces beate very fast, the which signes when ye see in y^e woman labouryng, it is an euident token that she shal not lyue long after her deliuerance, wherfore commit the cure of her to the handes of almyghtie God: but yf none of these signes do appeare, then haue good hope, for the woman shal do wel, the byrth beyng once departed: wherfore geue all diligence to the expulsion of it, that the woman maye be deliuered of this dead burthen, the whiche thyng maye be done by two wayes, eyther by medicines expulsive, or els by certayne instrumentes made for the nonce.

Two meanes to erpel
dead birthes

fyyste without instrumentes, with this fumigation. Take eyther the houe or dongue of an Asse, and put it on coles, and let the woman receaue the fume vnderneath.

¶ Another.

Take the skinne of an Adder, Myrre, Castoriū, Brymstone, Galbanum, Oppoponacum, Madder that the Diers occupie, Pigeons donge, or Hawkes donge, beate al these to powder, & temper the with Oxe gal, & make pylls of it, eche the quantitie of a fylberde nutte, and then put one after another

another in the coales, and receaue the fume thorough a pipe or conduite made for that purpose into the priuities.

Another. Take Encense, Oppoponacum, Galbanum, Brimstone, of eche lyke muche, beate them together, and temper them with Dre gall, and make pilles of them, and then of the same make fumigations, as before.

A potion for the same purpose. Take Asa fetida, halfe a dram, of Rue three drams, of Myrre two drams, and beate them to powder, and geue to the woman at eche tyme a dram of this powder with white wine, or with water in the whiche Sauiue is sodden.

Another. Take figges, fenegreke, Organnie, and seethe them in water, the whiche geue vnto the woman to drinke: for this drynke wyll engender lubricitie and slippernes in the neather partes, and vse also some of those thinges which haue vertue to prouoke the byrth, whereof we entreated before.

Item, certayne pessaries or suppositaries concerning the same. Take Gumme, Ammoniack, Oppoponacum, Heliborus niger, Staphisager, Aristolochia longa, and Colocinthis without his kernels, beate all these thinges together, tempering them with Dre gall, and also with the iuice of fresh Rue, then make a pessarie of wollen, and annoynt and wete the pessarie with the same, conuaying it into the secrete places.

Item another. Make a pessarie of wollen, of the length and thiknesse of a finger, and dippe
it

The seconde booke.

it in the iuyce of Rue in the whiche is dissolved a quantitie of Scammorie, and do with that pessarie, as before.

Item, take Aristolochia rotunda, Sauine, garden Cresses, of eche lyke muche, beate them to powder, and temper them with Dre gall, with this annoynt a pessarie made and ordered as before is spoken of.

Item, yf the woman drynke the mylke of another woman, it wyl styre and expell the byrth.

Item, take of the iuyce of Dittayne, or of the powder of the roote of the same hearbe two drams, and geue the same to drynke to the woman with wine, except she be in great heate, for then shall ye geue it her with luke warme water, and this shall expell the dead byrth without anye peryll of the Mother.

Item, take of Myrhe foure drammes, of Cinnamon, Galbanum, Castorium, of eche two drams, of Oppopocacum, one dramme, all those beaten & tempered together with Dre gal, make pilles of them, wayninge eche of them a dramme, and with the fume of those, perfume the neather partes, by this vapour the dead birth is brought forth, inflation and suffocation of blood is expelled.

Item, take of water Minte, Sothernwood. Mugwort, of eche a handfull, of Asphaltum halfe an ounce, of Madder, two ounces and an halfe, of Camomell, Horehounde, fenegreke, of eche two ounces, seethe all these thinges together in
rain

raine water, in the whiche let the woman bathe her selfe: then take of Hennes greace and Duckes greace, of eche foure drammes, to the whiche add two ounces of oyle of Dyll seede, with this oyntment annoynt the womans head conuynge out of the bathe, then take Date stones, and beate them to powder a dramme and an halfe, with a scruple of Saffron tempered together with white wine, the whiche let her immediately drinke after she come forth of the bathe.

Item, take Oppoponatum, and make thereof a pessarye the quantitie of a synger, conuaye it into the priuities, this expelleth the deadde byrth.

Item, take of Galbanum a dram or somewhat lesse, of Goates mylke an ounce and a halfe, or two ounces, in the whiche the Galbanum being dissolved, geue it to the woman to drinke.

Item, a plaster for the same. Take Galbanum, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Mother-wurt, and of this make a plaster by putting to of ware a certayne quantitie: then take a linnen cloth of suche length and breadth that it may couer all the belly vnder the Nauell to the priuities, from one syde to the other, on this clothe spreade this plaster of the thiknesse of a strawe, and lay it to the belly.

Item, take the Triacle whiche is called Diaressarium, & geue of it to the woman for to drinke, and it wyll expell the dead byrth.

But yf all these medicines profite not, then
must

The seconde booke.

musste be bled more seuerer and harde remedies with instrumentes, as hokes, tongues, and such other thynges made for the nonce. And fyrst the woman muste be layde a long byrtyght, the middle part of her bodye lying hier then all the rest, companyed of women assisting her about, to comfort her, and to kepe her downe, that when the byrth is plucked out, she ryle not withall. Then let the Midwyfe annoynt her lefte hande with the oyle of whyte Lillies, or other that maye make it soople and smothe, and holding out her fingers shutting together her hand, let her put it into the Matrix to feele and perceaue after what fashion the dead byrth lyeth in the Mothers wombe, so that she may the better put in hokes, and suche other instrumentes to plucke it out withall.

If so be that it lye the head forwarde, then fasten a hooke eyther vppon one of the eyes of it, or the rooffe of the mouth, or vnder the chin, or on one of the shoulders, which of these partes shall seeme moste commodious and handsome to take it out by, and the hooke fastened, to drawe it out very tenderlye for hurtyng of the woman.

But yf it lye the feete forwarde, then fasten the hooke on the bone aboue the priuie partes, or by some rybbe, or some of the backe bones, or of the brest bones: and when this hooke is thus fastened, the Midwyfe may not by and by drawe and plucke at it, but holdyng it in her lefte hande

hande, let her with her ryght hande fasten another in some other parte of the byrth, ryght agaynst the fyrst, and then tenderly let her drawe both together, so that the byrth may proceede and come forth on both sydes equally, mouyng it from one syde to another, tyll ye haue gotten out altogether, and now and then to helpe it in the commyng forth with the foresynger well annoynted, yf it chaunce to stycke, or to be lette any where: and as it commeth forth, alwaye to remoue the hookes farther and farther on the dead byrth.

Agayne, yf it chaunce that one of the handes onely of the byrth do appeare, and that it can not conueniently be reduced and returned bpwarde agayne, by reason of the narrownesse of the place, then bynde it with a linnen cloth that it slyp not bp agayne, and then to plucke it outwarde vntyll such tyme that the whole arme be out, and then with a sharpe knyfe cutte it of from the body, and euen so do yf both handes appeare fyrst at once, or one legge, or both, yf they can not be returned backe to be otherwyle taken out conuenientlye. As ye cutte the armes from the shoulders, so lykwyle cuttyng the legges from the thyghes, for the whiche purpose the Chyrurgions haue meete instrumentes made for the nonce, with the which suche legges and armes may soone be cut fro the body. These partes beyng once resecte and cutte from the bodye, then turne the rest, so that it maye easlye proceede with as lytle payne to the mother as

The second booke.

may be.

If it be so that the chyldes head be so swollen by inflation, swelling, or resort of humours, that it wyl not conueniently issue out at that narrow places: Then let the Midwyfe with a sharpe penknife cutte open the head, that the humours conteyned in it may issue and runne forth, and so the head to waxe lesse, able to be plucked out: But yf it be so, that not by anye suche casualtie the head be bygge, but onely of a naturall growth, then muste the head be broken in peeces, and the partes euermore taken forth with suche instrumentes as the Chirurgicals haue redy and necessarie for suche purposes.

Agayne, yf that after the head were come forth, yet the breast part woulde not folowe for greatnesse: Then must ye breake and cut lyke wyse that part, vnto suche tyme that it may be had forth. And euen so lyke wyse yf all the reste of the body shoulde be so swollen that it woulde not proceede ne come forth: then muste it lyke wyse be broken in peeces, and so had forth.

Farthermore, yf by chaunce or disease it come to passe, that the mouth of the Matrix be erucerate or appostumate, so that the passage be made the narrower by that meanes, the dryer, and the more contract: then must ye fyrst studye and endeouour you to soople and ease the places by oyles and other greaces, suche as I spake of sufficiently before in the fourth Chapter, with bathes and fumigations.

Also

Also yf the dead byrth come sydelong, then must ye do what maye be done to conuerte and turne it to suche fashon, that it may moſte eaſelye be brought forth. The Matrix and other ſecretes muſt be annoynted, perfumed, and vapoured with ſuch thinges the which may make it more ample and large. If it can not be thus had forth whole, then let it be cutte out by peece meale, as is before ſpoken of. And yf after this delyueraunce the flowres iſſue ouer behemently, then uſe ſuche thinges as haue vertue to reſtrayne them, of the whiche I haue ſpoken in the. li. Chapter before.

But contrarpe to all this, yf it chaunce that the woman in her labour dye, and the chyld hauyng lyfe in it: then ſhall it be meete to kepe open the womans mouth, and alſo the neather places, ſo that the chyld may by that meanes both receaue and alſo expell ayre and breath, whiche otherwyle myght be ſtopped, to the deſtruction of the chyld. And then to turne her on the lefte ſyde, and there to cut her open, and ſo take out the chyld. They that be borne after this faſhion are called Ceſars, for be-
 cauſe they be cutte out of theyr mothers belly: whereupon alſo the noble

Romayne Ceſar the fyrſte
 toke his name!

The second booke.

In the last Chapter of this booke be breiefely recited certayne expert medicines, whiche be most requisite to the cheefe purpose intended in this present booke. Cap. r.

As muche as the principall intent and ende of this booke is, to shewe the meanes and medicines whereby the womans labour may be made the more easie: therefore here I wyl compendiously set foorth certayne midicines, oyntmentes, and emplasters, suche as shalbe sufficient and moſte requisite to that purpose, and suche agayne as hath ben well experimented and practised: The whiche also it shalbe convenient (for them that may) alwayes to haue in a redynesse agaynst theyr tyme of neede. For although that nature be the cheefe and head doer in all this busynesse, (as in conception, bearyng, and the byrth:) yet notwithstanding, medicines many tymes do helpe, ayde, and fortifie nature, beyng sometyme impedit and lette, yea, impotent and not able to do her office as shoulde appertayne.

When the tyme then of the womans labour is come, yf the labour long and paynefully, and yet the byrth do not proceede: then for the more expedite and quicke deliuerance, geue her of this medicine folowynge.

Take of the fynest Cinamome that may be chosen

The second booke. Fol.xcvi.

chosen.iiii. drammes, and with a sharpe knyfe fyrst thred it in very small peeces, and then beate it to very fyne powder.

Item of Saffron dryed by the fyre tyll it be blackyshe, of Cassia lignea, fyne Reubarde, Sauiue dryed, Myrthe, of eche of these seuen scruples, of pure Muske.xvi. graynes, euery of these simples exquisitely by them selues powdred, and then perfectly myxed in one, with .vi. oz. vii. droppes of Maluesey, temper the whole masse into lytle roundels or trochiskes, eche waying a dramme. And in tyme of neede at the womans labour, geue her hardy the wayght of .vi.d. of these trochiskes beaten into fine powder, with .iiii. sponesfulles of Hysope water, and other. .iiii. of good wine secke.

This midicine is not onely profitable at this tyme to prouoke the byrth, but also is notablie good to expell the after byrth, or anye other suche lyke matter in that place, hauiyng neede of expulstion.

Item, yf neede do so require, it shalbe very expedient to haue this emplaster folowynge, in a redynesse, the which spread abroad vpon a linnen cloth, either els vpon leather, and so applyed to the bottome of the bellye in as large maner as maye be, dilateth and openeth the pores of that partes, amplifieth, enlargeth, and dissoluethe them, whereby that that is contayned in the bellye syndeth the freer issue, to the lesse greauaunce of the mother.

Take of Emplastrum de Melliloto, of Diachilon, of

℞ iiii

Oxycroceum,

The second booke.

Oxycroceum, of eche two ounces, of the rootes of Asarum, of wyld Pepper dyed, the leaues of Benioim, of tosted Cummin, of eche two dragmes, of good Castorium, iiii. dragmes, of the oyle of Wyll one or two spoonefulls: Such of these as are to be powdred, beate them fyne, and then ouer a soft fyre temper them altogether perfectly.

Item, the same emplaister may serue to be layde ouer all the bottome of the bellye and the priuite passage, to prouoke and drawe forth the latter or hynder byrth yf neede be: But yf that be not strong enough, then lay to this plaster following, whiche is of muche more efficacie, force, and strength.

Take of Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum, Myrre, of eche an ounce, of Colloquintida, Heliborus niger, of eche two drams, of Castorium, Perethrum, and Storax liquida, of eche three dragmes, of Turpentine and Petroleum, of eche foure drammes. fyrst ouer a soft fyre temper the Turpentine, Petroleum, and Storax liquida, together, then thereto adde Colloquintida, Heliborus, Castorium and Perethrum, beyng fyrst well and finely beaten to powder: after put to the Galbanum, Ammoniacum, Serapinum and Myrre, beyng fyrst dissolued in good Maluesey, and so take it from the fyre, and labour it with your handes. This plaster is of great effect to prouoke the after byrth.

Item, vnset Leekes stamped and fryed with butter, and so layed plaster wyse to the belly serueth well for the same.

Item,

The second booke. Fol. xcviij.

Item, the leaues or flowres of Marygoldes drunke with whyte wine, expell the afterbirth. Also the sayde leaues and flowres dyled, and at tyme of neede, kyndeled with a ware candle, and the fume thereof receaued vnderneath into the priue part, prouoketh out merueylously the afterbirth.

¶ Item a comfortable pocion, to be taken after the deliuerance of the chyld.

Take of the sweetest garden Myntes, greene or dyle, of the leaues of Baume greene also or dyle, of the leaues of Maioram, the rootes of fenell the pyth taken out, the flowres of Buglos, of Rosemarie, of Ruds, of Borage, and of dyled red Rose leaues, of eche of these halfe a handfull, more or lesse as it pleaseth you, of Cloues and Mase brused a lyttle, the wayght of two pence, of Cinamome shredde in small portions the wayght of. vi. grotes, knyrt all these together in a cloute or lyttle linnen bagge, and hange the same bagge in a quart of Borage water the space of a daye and a nyghte: then take out the sayde bagge, and reserue the water, of the whiche take one halfe, and the other halfe of pure wine Secke, or els Muscadell: and beyng myrt together, put thereto a lyttle of the conserue of Barberies, conserue of Borage flowres, conserue of Rosemarie flowres, and drynke hereof euerye day the space of foure or fyue dayes, at once foure spoonefulles of the water, and other foure of the foresayde wyne. And this potion shall both comforte the woman, and also helpe
P iiii greatly

The second booke.

greatly to the expulſion of all noyſome thynges to be expelled.

And here it is worthy to be noted, that where as it is a common blaſe to geue often to women in theyr chyldre bed cawdels of Otemeale, thyn- kyng and ſaying thereby the woman to be ſcou- red, whereas in deede the ſayde Otemeale is a notable bynder and dryer: Therefore ye ſhall vn- derſtand, that the ryght vſe thereof is, to geue it to ſuche as haue alreedy ben well and ſufficient- ly ſcoured and cleaſed from theyr after byrth, and other thynges to be looked for in this tyme and caſe: but yf the woman be not ſufficientlye purged alreedy, then geue her no Otemeale cau- dels, ne other thynges that may bynde.

And thus I make an ende, praying the wo- men readers hereof, to accept and ſuſtine them ſelues with theſe fewe medicines here in this Chapter mentioned, and often by me and other practiſed. The which thyng yf they ſhall do ſo, it ſhall (no doubt) be occaſion to me the ſooner to retake this matter in hande agayne, and to refreſhe and furnyſhe the ſame with newe and much more excellent experiences then hath ben yet hytherto read or ſeene in any booke concer- nyng ſuch matters.

And as touchyng the aboue Trochiſkes and em- plaſters deſcribed here in this place, ye ſhall fynde them alwayes redye made in

Boucklers berie in
London.

In this first Chapter of the thyrd booke,
is fyrst declared the matters therein conteyned,
and then howe the Infant newely bozne
must be handled, nourished and
looked to. Cap. i.



In the second booke what is to
we haue sufficient- be done
lye and at length when the
declared the ma- chylde is
ners, fashions, and bozne.
diuersities of byr-
thes, with the daū-
gers and perylles
often chaunsing to

the women at theyr labours, and after
the same. And now here in this thyrd
booke shalbe entreated what is to be
done to the infant bozne. And howe to
chose a Nurse, & of her office: With ma-
nyfolde medicines, & remedies agaynst
sundrie infirmities, which cfsolones hap-
pen to Infantes in the yr infansie.

Then after that the Infant is once come to
lyght, by and by the Nayll muste be cutte three
syngers breadyth from the belly, and so knytte vp,
and let be strued on the head of that that remay-
neth, of the powder of Bole armeniacke, and San-
guis draconis, Sarcocola, Myrre, and Cummin,
of eche lyke muche beaten to powder: then vpon
that

The chyldre booke.

that bynde a peece of woll, dypped in oyle Olive
that the powder fall not of. Some vse fyrste to
knyt the Nauyll, and after to cutte it so much, as
is before rehearsed.

And farthermore some saye, that of
What length the reste of the Nauyll is
left, of the same length shal the chyldes
tong be, if it be a man child. *Itē* Auicenna
saith, that diuers things may be know-
en by markyng of the chyldes Nauyll:
For (as he sayth) When the woman is
deliuered of her first chylde, then behold
the Nauyl of the childe: which yf in that
part of it which is next vnto the body it
haue neuer a wrinkle, it protendeth and
doth signifie perpetuall from thence-
foorth sterilitie or barenesse: and yf it
haue any wryncles in it: then so manye
wryncles, so many chyldren shal the wo-
man haue in time to come. Also some ad-
to this, and say, that if there be litle space
betwene these wryncles in the nauil, the
shal there be also litle space betwene the
bearyng of the chyldren: if muche, it sig-
nifieth long tyme betweene the bearing
of them: but these sayinges be neither in
the Gospell of the day, ne of the nyght.

Nowe

Nowe to retorne to our purpose, when that the Nauyll is cut of, and the rest knytted by: annoynt all the chyldes bodye with the oyle of A cornes, for that is singularly good to confyrme, stedfast, and to defende the body from noysome thynges, whiche maye chaunce from without, as smoke, colde, and suche other thynges: whiche yf the Infante be greued withall straight after the birth, beyng yet verie tender, it shoulde hurte it greatly.

After this annoyntyng, washe the Infante with warme water, and with your synger (the naye beyng pared) open the chyldes nolethrylles, and purge them of the fylthynesse. And also that the Nurse handle so the chyldes syttyng place, that it may be prouoked to purge the bellye. And cheefely it must be defended from ouermuch colde, or ouermuch heate.

After that the parte extant or the knotte of the Nauyll is fallen (the whiche commonly chaunceth after the thyrde or fourth daye) then on the reste remaynyng, strewe the powder of Ashes of a Calfes hooft burnte, or of Snayle shelles, or of the powder of lead, called red lead, tempered with wine.

Furthermore, when the Infante is swaddled and layde in Cradell, the Nurse must geue all diligence and heede that she bynde euery part ryght, and in his due place and order, and that with all tenderesse and gentle entreatyng, and not crookedly and confusely, the whiche also

The chyldre booke.

also must be done oftentimes in the day, for in this is it, as it is in young and tender ympe, plantes and twygges: the whiche, even as ye bowe them in theyr youth, so wyll they evermore remayne vnto age. And even so the Infant, yf it be bounde and swadled, the members lying ryght and strayght, then shall it growe strayght and vpryght. If it be crookedly handled, it wyll growe lyke wyse. And to the yll negligence of many Nourises, may be imputed the crokednesse and deformitie of many a man and woman, whiche otherwyse myght seeme as well fauoured as any other.

By the only negligence of Nourises many chyldre groweth crokebacked, & wyrelegged.

Item, let the chylde's eyes be oftentimes wyiped and cleansed with a fyne and cleane linnen cloth, or with sylke. And let the armes of the Infant be verie strayght layde downe by the sydes, that they may growe ryght, and sometime strokyng the belly of the chylde before the besycke or bladder, to helpe to ease, and to prouoke the chylde to the making of water: and when ye lay it in the Cradell to sleepe, sette the Cradell in suche a place, that neither the beames of the Sunne by day, neyther the Moone by nyght come on the Infant, but rather set it in a darke and shadowy place, laying also the head euer somewhat hyer then the rest of the body.

And farther, let it be washed two or thre tymes in the day, & that anone after sleepe, in the winter with hotte water, in the Sommer with luke warme water: nether let it tary long in the water, but vnto suche tyme as the bodye begyn
to

to ware red for heate, but take heede that none of the water come into the infantes eares, for that should greatly hurt his hearyng another day.

Then, to be short, when it is taken out of the bath, let it be wyped and dyed with gentle and soft linnen clothes warmed, and then to laye it on her lappe the backe bpwarde, the whiche with her handes let her tenderly stroke and rub, and then to lappe it bp, and to swaddell it, and when it is swadled, to put a droppe or two of water into the nolet hylles of it, is very good for the eye syght. And so to lay it to rest.

¶ Of the Nurse and her mylke : and howe long the chylde shoulde sucke. Cap. ii.



Also concerning the The mothers mylke
brynnyng bp, nouryshe-
mente, and geuyng of best & most
sucke to the chylde, it familer to
shalbe beste that the the chyloe.
mother geue her chylde
sucke her selfe, for the
mothers milke is more
conuenient and agree-
able to the Infant,
then any other wo-
mans, and more doth it nouryshe it, for because
that in the mothers belly it was wont to the
same, and fed with it, and therefore also it doth
more desyrouslie couet the same, as that with
the which it is best acquaynted. And to be short,
the mothers mylke is most hollosomest for the
chylde.

The thirde booke.

chylde, as Auicenna wyrteth, it shalbe sufficient to geue it sucke twyse or thryse in a daye. And alwayes beware ye geue not the chylde to muche sucke at once in this tender age of it, for cloyng of it, and least also it lothe it: but rather let it haue often of it, and lyttle at once, then fewe tymes, and ouermuche at once. For suche as be ouer cloyed with the mothers mylke, causeth theyr body to swell and inflate, and in theyr brine shal it appeare, that it is not ouercome ne concocted or digested in the chylde: which thyng yet yf it chaunce, let the Infant be kept fastyng vntyll such tyme as that which it hath receaued alreedy be completely digested.

Item, yf the mothers mylke be somewhat sharpe or coleryke, let her neuer geue the chylde her brest fastyng. Yf it be so that the mother can not geue the Infant sucke her selfe, eyther for because of sycknesse, or that her brestes be soze, and her mylke corrupted: then let her chose a holsome Nourse, with these conditions folow- yng.

To chose a
good Nurse.

Fyrste that she be of a good colour and complexion, and that her bulke and brest be of good largenesse. Secondly, that it be not to soone ne to long after her labour, so that it be two monethes after her labour at the leaste, and that (yf it may be) such one whiche had a man chylde.

Thyrde, that she be of meane and measurable lyknyng, neyther to fatte ne to leane. Fourchlye, that she be good and honeste of conuersation, neyther ouer hastye or yrefull, ne to sadde or solome

lome, neyther to fearefull or tymorous: for these affections and qualities be pernicious and hurtfull to the mylke, corruptyng it, and passe forth through the mylke into the childe, makyng the chylde of lyke condition and manners. Also that they be not ouerlyght and wanton of behauour. fyfthly, that her breastes be full, and haue sufficient plentie of mylke, and that they be neyther to greate, softe, hangyng, and flaggynge, ne to lyttle, harde, or contracte, but of a measurable quantitie.

Also looke vpon her mylke, that it be not blackyshe, blewyshe, grey, or reddyshe, neyther sower, sharpe, saltyshe, or brackyshe, neyther thynne and fluy, neyther ouer grosse and thicke, but temperately whyte, and pleasaunt in taste.

The consy-
deration of
the Purses
mylke.

And to be shorrt, that mylke is best and mosse to be chosen, of the which a droppe beyng mylked softly vpon the nayle of the thumbe, holdyng your fynger styll it rolleth not of, neyther flyteth abroad, but yf ye moue your hande a lytle it wyll syde of by and by: but yf when it is mylked on the nayle it spreade abroad, and flyt by and by, then is it to thyn, but yf it cleaue styll when that ye moue a lytle your hande, then is it to spysse and thicke. The meane betweene both is best.

If it be so that the Nourles mylke be to hot, sharpe, or colericke: then let her neuer geue the chylde sucke, her selfe beyng fastyng.

Sometyme it chaunceth that the mothers or Nourles mylke doth fayle or decrease, the
whiche

The childe booke.

Diuers can, which thyng may come by dyuers causes: as by
ses of the de- sicknesse, by disease in the breastes, or by takyng
fect or fay- of colde in the same, and so stoppe and cludder
ling of mylk the mylke, or for because she lacketh suche thyn-
ges the which myght engender mylke, other by
ouermuch fastyng, hunger and thyrst, the which
causes muste be well consydered: and then ac-
cording to that, minister a remedie.

Thynges which do augment and encrease mylke be these.

Lette her vse to eate Parsnyp, eyther the seede
or the roote: also the seede or roote of fenyll, sod-
den in the broth made with Barley or Cicercula,
let her eate of that with other meates that she
feedeth on.

Item, to eate sheepes breastes, and the mylke of
them is good.

Item, take an ounce of cowe butter, and dis-
solue it in warme whyte wine, the whiche let the
Nurse drynke.

Item, boryng vnder the breastes doth well,
without scarification.

Item, a plaster for the same of frankencense,
Masticke, and Pitche, layde to the breastes, or
vnder the breastes, the skynne fyrste beyng an-
noynted with oyle, least it shoulde cleaue ouer
fast to the place.

Item, it shalbe verye good to rubbe softlye
with the hande the breastes, or els in bathynge
after dynner or supper, to cause some to sucke her
breast.

Item, take the oyle of whyte Lyllyes, or of
violetttes, and myngle with it Muske, Ensence,
and

The thirde booke. Fol. Cii.

and Laudanum, well tempered together, in the same dippe a peece of wooll, and clappe it to the brestes, and soke them with it.

Item washe them, and soke them often tymes with wine, in the which is decocte and sodden Mintes, Roses, violettes, and Xiloaloes. Also to eate of the broth in the whiche is sodden a Pen, with Cinamome, Maces, Cardamomum, and also the yolke of an egge.

Item it is good for her to eate freshe Cheese and mylke, and to refrayne from all maner of great labour and harde workes.

Also potage made of beane meale, ryce, and bread made of fine flowre, tempered with Milke and Suger, putting to it also a quantitie of fenell seede, or of the leaues, is very good for her.

Item take of Annis seede, of Siler montanum, of eche three drams, of Chrystall beaten to powder two drams, & as muche of Suger, geue her this to drinke about ten dayes, at morning, euenyng, and myd day.

Item take of fenel seede, or the leaues, and of Horehounde, of eche two handfulls, of Annis seede foure drams, of Saffron beaten one scruple, also of freshe Butter three ounces, and seethe all these in sufficient water, makyng hereof a plaster, the same plaster whylest it is hoate, laye it to the Nurfes brest.

Item take of Cummin seede an ounce and an halfe, & of clarified Hony three ounces, seethe it in fīue pyntes of water altogether put into a newe pot, and let it seethe to the third parte, and

The thirde booke.

of this decoction geue the Nurse oftentimes to drynke.

Item take of Beetes well washed one ounce, of Cummin halfe an ounce, of Honye sixe ounces, of these myngled and tempered together, make an electuarie, of the whiche let her take both in the mornynge and euenynge, at eche time a sponesfull.

Item take two drams of Crystill beaten into fyne powder, and diuide that in foure equall partes: one of these partes geue vnto the Nurse, the space of foure dayes to drynke, with broth made eyther of Cicer, or elles of peason.

Also all these thinges folowynge, encrease and augment Mylke in the brestes: Annise, and Annis seede, Myll and the seede, Horehounde, Cardamomum, freshe Cheese, Wortes made of olde Cheese, Cicer, Cristal beaten to powder & taken with Honye, Lettuse, Fenel, wine in whiche Rosemarye or Sauery be sodden.

Company
ing with
men corrup
tet the nur
ses mylke.

Item to abstayne from benery or mans company: for yf she vse that, it shall spende and consume the Mylke, and make it vnsauery and vnholsome, neyther can the chyld well brooke it, but mooste commonly shall cast it by agayne, because it can not digest it.

Also it shalbe beste that the chyld sucke not of the Mothers breste by and by, as soone as it is borne, but rather of some other womannes, for a day or two, for because that the creame (as they call it) straight after the byrth, the fyrst day

in all women doth thicken and congele.

Item, yf it chaunce that the Nurse be ouer sore laxed, or that she be ouer bounde, so that she take anye medicines to remedie it: then let another geue the chylde sucke whylest she be recouered agayne. And when the chylde is layde in cradell to be rocked, rocke not to faste, leaste through ouer much rockyng and styrringe, the chylde's stomache turne, and the Wyke there corrupt for lacke of rest.

Auisen aduiseeth to geue the chylde sucke two yeaeres: howe be it amonge vs mooste commonly, they sucke but one yere. And when ye wyll weane them, then do it not sodenly, but a litle and litle, and to make for it litle pyles of bread and Suger to eate, and accustome it so, tyll it be able to eate all maner of meate: and this shall suffice for the education and bringing vp of infantes at this tyme. Notwithstandyng dyuers other thynges here are left vnspoken of, another tyme God wylling we shal declare them at large.

Howe long
the chylde
should sucke

C Of diuers diseases and infirmitie whiche chaunce to chyldren lately borne, and the remedies therfore. Cap. iiii.



Although there be in maner infinite diseases which happen the Infant, as writeth Hipocrates, Galenus,

Many diseases of Infantes.

¶ ii

Rafis,

The thirde booke.

Racis, Auicenna, and diuers other : yet for breuitie and shortnesse we wyl rehearse here onely suche of them whiche moſte commonly happen to the ſame, & that be theſe : exulceration of the gummes, ſlire of the belly, or ouermuch looſenes of the ſame, the belly harde bounde, the crampe, the coughe and diſtillation of the head, ſhorte wyndnes, bladders on the tongue, exulceration or clypping of the mouth, apoſtume in the eares, apoſtume in the brayne, ſwelling and bolnyng of the eyes, ſkumme or creame of the eyes, the feuer, knawynge in the bellye, the body ſwelling and puffed vp, often ſneefing, wheales or bladders of the body, ſwelling of the coddes, ſwelling of the nauyl, vnſleepineſſe, yering, appetite to parbreake, fearefulneſſe in the dreames, the mother iſſuyng out of the fundement gutte, wormes in the bellye, chaufyng, the falling ſickneſſe, the conſumption, the palsye, trembling of the partes of the body, the ſtone, goggle eyes.

How

Howe to cure and to remedie all these, now
wyl I shewe in order.

First in exulceration of the gummes, are ^{Of exulce-}
wont certayne pusses, and as it were whea- ^{ration of}
les to growe on the gummes, or in the cor- ^{the gums.}
ners of the iawes, the whiche put the place to
muche greivance: and to remedie this, it shalbe
good that ye with your synger rubbe the infan-
tes gummes, and the pusses or whelkes withal,
and then to annoynt the same gummes with
oyntment made of Hennes grece, Hares or Co-
nyes brayne, oyle of Camomell mixt with hony:
then take water, and in it seethe Camomell and
Dyll, the whiche water beyng hoate, powre it
on the chyldes head, holdyng it a foote aboue the
head.

Of the fire and ouermuch loosenes
of the belly.

For this take the seede of Roses, Cummin, ^{For the fire}
Annise, and the seede of Smalage, beate ^{in chyldren.}
all these together, and make them plaster,
wyse, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

And farther, yf that it whiche the infante boy-
deth be of redde or yelow colour, then geue it
to drynke of the syrope of Roses, or of Crabbes,
other els of Pomegranates, tempered with a li-
tle Mynte water.

Item, take the seede of Sorrell, and beate it,
then temper it together with the yolke of a
rosted

The thirde booke.

rosted egge, and geue that to the chylde to eate, or els take of the same seede bruised fyrst, and then see the it in fayre runnyng water, thereof let the chylde drynke two or thre tymes the day.

Item take a gall, and beate it to pouder, then see the it in water, with this water temper Barlye meale, or the meale of Mellium, and make a plaster of it, the whiche laye vnto the chylde's belly.

Item, yf that that commeth from the chylde be whytyshe, then take of Nutmegs the weight of a peny, and of whyte Frankencense a scruple, or the weyght of two pence, the which temper with the iuyce of a Quince, and geue it to the chylde to drynke.

Item, take the meale of Barley, temper it with the iuyce of Plantane, and a litle Vineger, and make it plasterwysse, and laye it to the chylde's belly, but beyng fyrst a litle boyled together ouer the fyre.

Item, take the iuyce of Centinodium, and the whyte of an egge, and temper them together, to the whiche adde the powder of dried red Roses, the powder of Hematites, Masticke, Frankencense, Bole armeniake, Sanguis Draconis, & the rindes of Pomegranate, of all these mixed together make a plaster, and lay it (fyrst warmed ouer the fyre) to the Infantes belly.

Item, to washe the chylde with the water in the whiche be sodden leaues of redde Roses, is very good.

Item, take the iuyce of Camfely, and the iuyce
of

of Plantane the more and the lesse, and in this put claye of an olde furnesse or Ouen, and make of it a plaster, and lay it to the chyldes belly.

¶ To vnloose the chyld beynge bounde.

If the chyld be so bounde, that it can not long tyme haue any stoole, then make a suppositarie of Hony, sodden till it be harde and massye, and let the suppository be of the length of your litle finger, and the bignesse of two wheate strawes bounde together, then dippe it into oyle, and conuey it into the chyldes fundament.

Item, lyke wyse ye may make a suppositar of the stalke and the roote of Beates, or els of the roote called Oresse or flouredeluce roote, made of the quantitie before spoken, and conuayed into the sitting place of the chyld.

Item, to geue to the Infant as much Hony as a pease to drynke, and to rubbe the belly a litle, and to souple it with a peece of wooll dipped in oyle, or dipped in Bulles gall, and layde to the Nauell.

Item, ye may geue vnto the Nurse a medicine whiche hath vertue to vnbynde and loose, and the next day after let the chyld sucke her, and it wyll loose also the chyld.

Item, take of small Mallowes, of great Mallowes, of eche an handfull, of fenegreke & Linseed of eche an ounce, of Polypoke two ounces, of figges the number of .x. see the all these together in water, and then stampe them in a mortar, and

The thirde booke.

put vnto it of Butter and of Hennes grece of
eche two ounces, and of Saffron one scruple,
and make a plaster of it vpon a linnen cloth, of
the thiknesse of a straw, and lay it to the chyldes
belly, a day and a nyght.

¶ If this moue not the belly, then take of Aloes,
Cicotrine one dram, of Heleborus both niger and
albus, of eche .xv. graynes, beate these to powder,
then temper them with thre sponesfuls of the
iuyce of Malwurt, or of Dre gall, in this licour
dippe woll, and lay it to the Nauell the breadth of
a hande, and bynde it to the place.

Item, take the iuyce of Malwurt and of Mill
meale, & seethe those together, till they be thicke,
then make a plaster thereof, and lay it to the belly
beneath the Nauell.

¶ Remedie for the crampe or distention of the members.

If it chaunce that the infante be taken with
the disease called the crampe, the whiche for
the mooste part commeth of indigestion, and
of the weakenesse of the power attractiue, and
specially in suche chyldren the whiche be verye
fat and moyste, then shall ye annoynt all along
the backe of the infante with the oyle of blew
flowredeluce, or els white Lillies, either the oile
of Rue.

¶ If the crampe take the chyld whylest it stret-
cheth forth the armes, legges, and other mem-
bers (as we be wont in gaping or ianyng) then
let

let it be bathed and washed in water, in the whiche prime Roses, Couflappes, or the flowres of Camomell be sodden, or els annoynt it with the oyle of Violettes, and the oyle of sweete Almons tempered together: and yf the chylde be in greate heate, annoynt him with the oyle of Violettes, or with oyle Olyue, tempered with a litle whyte ware, and also powre on the childes head the oyle of violettes.

Remedie for the cough and distillation, or
Catarrhes of the head.

Sometymes the chylde is sore encombred with the coughe, and with distillation or running of humours out of the head, to the nose, the mouth, & the brest, y which ye shal remedy thus.

fyrst powre warme water on the chylde's head, holdyng it a foote and a halfe from the chylde's head, and so do continually the space of halfe an houre, and in the meane whyle put a litle Honye on the chylde's tongue to chaue bypon: then put your synger into the chylde's mouth, and depresse or holde downe the innermoste part, or the roote of the tongue nexte to the throte, to prouoke the chylde to vomite, and to boyde the grosse and viscoure humours whiche be cause of this yll.

Item take Gumme Arabicke, Gumme Dragagant, the seede of Quinces, the iuyce of Lycorise, and Sugar penedium, all this beaten together

The thirde booke.

gether, geue euery day to the chylde a quantitie with Mylke newe mylked.

Item, make Almonde mylke, with Almondes blanchēd, and only the iuyce or water of Fenell, wherof when it is well sodden, let the chylde eate or drynke mornyng and euenyng, or anye other tyme of the day.

And yf it be so that the cough haue exasperat and made rough the tongue and the rooſe of the mouth, then take of the ſeedes of Quinces two ſponefulles, bruiſe them a litle, and ſtpe them in warme water the ſpace of two or three houres, then ſtrayne the viſcouſe & groſſe water from them through a ſtrayner, and that remayneth, frye it together in a frying panne with Sugar Penidium, and the oile of ſweete almondes, thereof makyng an electuarium, the whiche geue vnto the chylde to receaue: yf the chylde haue great heate with the cough, then ad vnto the ſame electuarie, the iuyce of a ſweete Pomegranate.

Item agaynſt the cough and ouer muche heate, take the ſeede of white Popie and Dragagant, of eche two drams, of the ſeedes of Cowardes foure drams, and beate all theſe together, and geue at once the weight of foure pence to the chylde, with the water in whiche reaſons haue ben ſodden.

Item, take Reaſons, and doying away the graynes of it, ſeeth them together with water in a frying panne, ſo that they burne not to the bottome of the panne: then take it from the fyre
and

and beate it well in a mortar, temperyng therewithall Suger Penidium, and geue of this in the mornyng and euenyng to the chylde.

Agayne, yf the cough come of a colde cause, then take a litle Myrthe beaten to powder, and temper it with a quantitie of warmed Hony, and the oyle of sweete Almondes, and of this geue vnto the chylde.

Furthermore the Nurse must auoyde all such thinges, the which may engender cough, as Vineger, ouer muche salted meates, Cheese, Nuts, & all sharpe thinges. Also she must annoynt the chyldes brest with butter, and with Dialthea.

Item, for the cough, take Reasens and frye them in a frying panne, then stampe them in a mortar, and to that adde as muche of Suger Penidium, with a litle oyle of violettes, & make an electuarie of these, and geue to the chylde the mountenaunce of a hassell Nut.

Remedy for short wynde.

MAny tymes chaunceth also to Infantes difficultie of brethying or short windnesse: the which to remedie, take Lineseede, and beate it, & geue of it vnto the chylde with Hony: but yf the disease encrease on the chylde, and that the wynde pipes in maner seeme stopped, then annoynt well the eares, and all the places about the eares with oyle Olyue, and also the tongue, for to prouoke vomite, and then powre a litle warme water into the chyldes mouth to washe it withall, and geue to it a litle Lineseede, tempered with Honye and beaten, made after the

The thirde booke.

the fashion of an electuarie.

Item, yf the chyld haue besydes this also the
flir: then geue vnto it the Syrope of Myrtys,
other els Dates sodden with Milke and flowre.

Against wheales oz bladders on the tongue.

Item, sometymes happeneth to the
chyldren wheales and blisters on theyr
tongues and mouth, whiche thinges
commeth of the sharpenesse and eager-
nesse of the Nurses mylke, the mouth
and tongue of the Infant beyng so ter-
der, that the least thing that toucheth
it, shal offende it: wherfore, besides that
it is great payne to the chyld thus to be
blistered by the eagernes of the milke, it
is also very perillous and dangerous.
For suche wheales which be not ripe &
seeme blacke, betoken death: whiche yf
they be whyte oz yelowyshe, then they
be of lesse peryll.

Agaynst this yll, take violettes and Roses,
and seethe them in a litle Rose water, and ther-
with washe the blysters.

Item, take the iuyce of Letuse, the iuyce of
Petie.

Petrie morell, and the iuyce of Purselayne, which when they be well commixt and tempered together, annoynt therewith the whelkes. And yf the foresayde blysters oz whelkes be blackishe: then adde to the foresayde iuyces, Licorise beaten to powder.

Item yf the same be very moyste, then take Myrre, Galles, the rine of Frankencense, beate them wel together, and temper them with Hony, and annoynt the chyldes tongue therewith.

Item take the iuyce of Mulberies before they be fully ripe, other els of vnyrpe grapes, which is called uergeus, and with that annoynt the tongue.

Item, it is very good to washe the tongue with redde wine, and then to strewe vpon it the pouder of Galles, oz els of the barke oz rine of Frankencense.

Yf ye wyll haue a quicker medicine in operation and sharper: then take Bole armeniake, Plidum, and Sumach, of eche thre drams: also of Galles two drams, of Alooe one dram, all these beate together, and searse them throughe a searser, and strewe that powder on the blisters.

Item yf these wheales be reddishe and cause muche spittle to gather together in that place, then let the Nurse vse suche thinges whiche are moyste and colde, and let her chaw in her mouth very small a fewe fatches, of the which lay on the Infantes mouth and tongue.

Item Amilum oz starch tempered together with
Rose

The thirde booke.

Rose water, & put on the chylde's tongue, is good.

Item, take the iuyce of Pomegranates, the iuyce of Quinces, or the iuyce of Oranges, and do of this on the chylde's tongue in lyke maner: but yf the wheales or blysters be somewhat yelowyshe, then to these iuyces spoken of before, adde the iuyce of Lettuse and of Purselayne. But yf the wheales seme whytyshe, then take of Myrthe and of Saffron, of eche one dramme, of Suger candye two drams, and beate these to pouder, and lay of it on the wheales and tongue.

C Of exulceration or clefture, chappynge or chynynge of the mouth.

Sometymes by reason of the hardnes of the Murses pappes, the chylde's lippes and mouth be exulcerate, hauing in maner of cleftes & chinnes in them: and in this case take tozed wooll, and dyp it in the iuyce of Plantaine, or els in Butter molten, or in fresh Hens greace, euery of them beyng warme, and with this annoynt the mouth and lippes of the chylde.

Of appostumatation and runnyng of the eares.



WHEN that humours and matter yssueth out of the eares, which properly commeth of aboundaunt humours in all the bodye, and most specially in the heade: then take a peece of wooll, and dyppe it in Hony mixt with redde wine, to the whiche is put also a litle quantitie

quantitie of Alome beaten to powder, or of Saffron, then make of the same as it were a tente, and put it in the chyldes eare, and when the tent hath sucked and drawen to it the humours and fylthynesse of the eare, then take it out, and put in newe: and yf that which commeth out of the eare be as matter, then take of sodden Hony, & temper it with water, put of it into the eares: or els take the powder of Galles, temperyng it with vineger, and do lyke wyse.

But yf the chylde haue great payne and dolour by wyndnesse, ventositie, and the humours in this place: then seethe Organy and Myrre with oyle Olyue, and so beyng warme, put of it into the eares.

Of apostumation in the head.

If there be any apostume engendered in the head, (whiche many times chaunceth) the which causeth the chekes & eies to be greatly payned, & the eye sight to waxe wannyshe or tawnye: then must be applied such thinges whiche may refrigerate and coole the braynes: as, take of the iuyce of Cowardes, and the iuyce of Myghtshade, iuyce of Purselayne, and temper them with the oyle of Roses, in this dyppe a peece of wooll, and laye it to the head, and as often as it waxeth drye, dyp it agayne.

Of

The thirde booke.

C Of the swelling or bolnyng of the eyes.

A Gaynst swelling and bolnyng of the eyes, take Licium, and temper it with womans Mylke, & put of it into the chyldes eyes, and bynde it to the place with a fine and soft linnen cloth: then afterwarde washe the eyes with water in which Camomel and Basill haue ben sodden. Yf that in this swelling the eyes be not red, neither the browes swollen: then take Myrthe, Aloes, Saffron, and the leaues of Roses, and temper all these, and steepe them in old wine, and binde it to the chyldes eyes with some linnen cloth, and into the chyldes nose put a quantitie of Ambre dissolued in womans Mylke.

C Of the scum or whyte of the eye.

A Gaynst the scum or whyte of the eye, whiche for the moste parte happeneth to chyldren through ouer muche crying and weepynge, take the iuyce of Solatrum, and drop of the same into the chyldes eye, and yf by the same chaunce the bayne of the eyes ware reddishe, or be swollen, then annoynt them with the same iuyce.

C Agaynst immoderate heate, or the feuer.

If the Infante be in greate and behemente heate contrary to nature, the whiche is called a feuer: fyrste it shalbe the Nurtles parte, to eate and vse suche thynges the whiche coole and moysten.

Also

The thirde booke. Fol. Cr.

Also to geue vnto the Infant of these thynges folowynge. The iuyce of Pomegranate, the water of Gourdes, Sugar, with a little Camphere mixed herewithall, tempered well together. Item it is very good to prouoke it to sweatyng.

Item, take of the iuyce of Doorne wood, of Plantane, Malowes, and Singrene, and temper them altogether, and seethe them a lyttle on the fyre, in the whiche also mixe Barly meale, and make a plaster of all these, and lay it to the chyldes breste. Also take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Poplar, and myxe them together, with this oyntment beyng colde annoynt the chyldes forehead, the temples, the armes, the handes about the wystes, and the pulles, and the feete about the ancles.

Item, take of Barly meale, and of dyed Roses, and powdred, and temper these with the water of Roses, and the water of Endiue, and make thereof on the fyre a plaster, the whiche laye to the chyldes brestes somewhat warme.

Also as often as the chyld is washed, let it be done with water in whiche is sodden suche thynges whiche coole: as Letuce, Purslane, Endiue, Plantane, and suche other.

Agaynst frettyng or gnawynge in the belly.

If the chyld be vexed with frettyng and gnawynge in the bellye, the whiche thyng ye shall knowe by the immoderate cryng of the chyld, and that it turneth from one syde to another with great cryng: then shall you take
R i warme

The thy?de booke.

warne water, wherein hath ben sodden Lauender, Cummin, Fenell seede, or the seede of Dyll, and oyle Oliue, temperyng them together, and herein dip a peece of wooll, and therewith looke the chyldes belly oftentymes.

Agaynst swellng of the body.



When the chyldes bodye or any parte thereof is swollen & puffed by, then take the toppes of Elder tree, and of malwurt, and seethe them in whyte wyne, and therein lay the Infant, speciall ye yf it be not taken with ouer greate heate: but yf so be that with swellng in the head the bellye be swollen also, the take Myrrhe, Aloes epatike, and Saffron, and beate them altogether, and temper them with the iuyce of Beanes, and lay it to the chyldes head.

Agaynst often sneesng.

Sometymes the Infantes be sore troubled and vexed with often sternutation and sneesng: whiche thyng yf it come of the apostume in the head, then shal ye minister such thynges to the head, whiche refrigerate and coole, whether it be oyles, oyntmentes, iuyces of the heartes, or other thynges. If this come of any other cause then of apostume: then take Basyll be it greene or drye, and put of the iuyce or powder of it into the chyldes nose. But yf this sneesng come and begyn with heate, and that the chyldes eyes seeme as they grewe inward for payne thereof: then lay to the chyldes head

head the leaues of Purslane, or Bowarde cutte in thynne slyces and tempered with the oyle of Roses, and Barley meale, and also the yolke of an egge.

Of whelkes in the body, and the cure.

These whelkes yf they appeare blacke vppon the body, they signifie peryll of lyfe, and so muche the more, the greater quantitie that there is of them: but yf they seeme whytyshe or reddishe, it is no peryll, and may easly be cured. Wherefore take the leaues of the redde Rose, the leaues of Mirtils, and of Tamariscus, and seeth these in water, and in that water wet a linnen cloth, and soke therewith the whelkes.

Item, lyke wyse it is good to annoynte the same with the oyle of Roses, of Mirtilles, and Tamariscus. If the whelkes be whyte or reddishe, then let them be rype before ye minister anye thing to them: and when they be open and begyn to matery, then to cleanse, purifie, and to drye them, beyng rype and broken, it is verie good to washe the same whelkes with Mulsun or Hydromell, in whiche Saltpeter is dissolued. Mulsun and Hydromell is, water and Honye sodden together.

Agaynst swellng of the coddess.

MAny tymes chaunceth to chyldren (thorowe ouermuche crying) swellng about the coddess, and sometymes burstenesse,

R ii

and

The thyde booke.

and swelling in the inner part of the thyghes, the whiche swelling sometymes cometh by inflammation or great heate, and someyme with onely wyndynesse. If it come of wyndynesse, then the coddes wyl sometymes appeare so styffe as a tabour, and shyne as it were an horne. The remedye for this is to take a quart of double Beere woort, and therein seethe or the leaues of Bay halfe a handfull, of Rue a quarter of an handfull, of Fenell, Dyll, and Camomell, of eche a meane handfull: cutte and broole all these hearbes together, and seethe them from the quarte to the pinte, then strayne them strongly from the liquer, in the whiche liquer seethe so muche beane flowre as may serue to make a plaster, therto addyng at the latter ende two or thre spoonefulles of oyle of Camomell, and lay this plaster hotte to the coddes. If the swelling come of heate, then alay the same with some colde hearbes, suche as I haue often tymes spoken of before.

¶ Agaynst swelling of the paupll.

Also sometymes the chyldes paupll swelleth, and specially strayght after the byrth when it is cutte. For this, take Spyke Celtyke, and seethe it in the oyle of Almondes, myxed with a lytle Turpentine: then in this dyppe wooll, and lay it on the place.

But yf so be that this swelling come of ouermuche crying, cough, or of a stroke or fall: Then take bytter Lupines, and the powder of sayre

faire olde linnen cloth burnt to powder, and temper these with red wine, and then in this dyp a peece of towe, and lay it to the Hauyll.

¶ Agaynst vnslleepynesse.

Against vnslleepynesse, that is, when the childe is destitute and wanteth his due and naturall rest, all the whyle crying and weepynge. For this take two heades (with the seedes therein containd) of wyte Popie, and with one spones full of Rose water, and three or foure droppes of Vineger, stampe them in a mortar reasonably, then adde thereto two sponesfulles of womans milke, and the waight of an halfpenny of Saffron, with halfe a sponesfull of Barlie flowre, the whiche yet stampe a little together agayne, and then laye it in a fine thynne double linnen cloth, and applie it to the forehead from one temple to the other.

Item, geue the chylde to drynke a little of the syrope of Popie. Also to annoynt the temples with the oyle of Popie is very good.

But yf this vnslleepynesse come of the impuritie of the Nurles mylke (as manye tymes it doth) then take of the oyle of Violettes, and put vnto it a little quantitie of Vineger, and of this licour droppe oftentymes into the chyldes nostrilles. Or els take the oyle of Roses, and temper it with the iuyce of Letuse, and therewith annoynt the head and the stomacke of the chylde, and farther, see that the Nurles mylke may be amended.

ing. populus

for S. morino. C. 7

The thirde booke.

¶ Agaynst peryng or the byckate.

His peryng commeth eyther of coldnesse of the stomache, other els of ouermuche fulnesse, or for lacke of meate and emptines of the stomache, or els by some hotte and colerike qualitie bytyng bpon the mouth of the stomache.

As often as it commeth by the aboundaunce of meate and fulnesse, the remedie is to prouoke it to bonite. If by coldenes of the stomache, then annoynt the stomache with the oyle of Bayes warmed, other els lay to the stomache a plaster made of the seede of Byll, beaten and tempered with the iuyce of Myntes.

But yf it chaunce by any heate or coleryke qualitie, then take the oyle of Violettes, or of Roles, the iuyce of Endiue, or of any other suche hearbes the whiche haue power to infrigidate and coole, and temper the same with womans mylke, and annoynt therewith the chyldes stomache.

And when it proceedeth by defecte and lacke of meate or emptinesse of the stomache, then geue to the chyld to feede bpon mylke, and other good holsome thynges to suppe, neyther passe not greatly though the chyld reiecte and bonite by agayne that the whiche it receaueth, for so muche euer wyll remayne in the stomache that shalbe sufficient to sustayne it, and meanely to nouryshe it.

¶ Agaynst

Agaynst often parbreakyng by weakenesse and
feeblesse of the stomacke.



Gainst ouermuch parbreaking, beat
foure graynes of Cloues, and geue it
to the chyld to drynke with foure oz
fyue spoonefulles of red wine.

hi Lat 7.7 Cardiac

Item, take of Masticke, whyte
frankencense, and the leaues of the red Rose
so muche as shalbe sufficient, and all these beaten
together, temper them with the iuyce of Myn-
tes, and make a plaster of it, laying it to the
chyldes stomacke. But yf the chyldes vomityng
be very behement, then put vnto these foresayde
thynges a quantitie of Rose vineger.

Item, take fine meale, and bake it so hot in
an ouen, oz els in a fryng panne ouer the fyre
tyll it waxe broune, then beate it to powder a-
gayne, puttyng it into vineger, and to these ad
the yolke of an egge hard rosted, Masticke, fran-
kencense, and Gumme Arabicke, and temper all
these with the iuyce of Myntes, makynge of it a
plaster, the whiche laye to the chyldes stomacke,
and to the chyldes mouth and nose hold a warme
toste of breade.

Causes of this yll be thre. The fyrst, yf the
chyld haue taken more mylke then it is able to
concocte and digest. The seconde, yf the Nur-
ses mylke be ouerthyme, wateryshe, and fluthe.
The thyrde, yf the same mylke be impure, se-
culent, and corrupte. These causes prouoke vo-
mite, and speciall ye yf the chyld also haue a

The thyzde booke.

weake and waterishe stomache: wherfore ye must helpe the Infant after this maner.

First let the childe sucke lesse then it did before, and then also marke that which the childe doeth perbrake, whether it sauer sharpely lyke Vene-ger, or that it be whytyshe. For yf it be so: then take of whyte Frankensence. viii. graynes, of dried Rue. xx. graynes: beate these to powder, and geue it to the childe to drinke, with the syrope of red Roses.

Or els let the Nurse chaue Cummin, and so put it into the chyldes mouth: Geue also of the syrope of Pomegranates, with the powder of dry Myntes to the chylde.

Take Masticke, Accatia, Xilaloos, Galles, whyte Frankensence, tosted bread, of eche lyke much, beate them together, puttyng to of red Roses, and temperyng it with the conserue of Roses, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

But if it so be that the perbrakyng of the childe sauer not after the fashon of Vineger, but after some other sowre sauour, and that it be not whytyshe, but pale or yelowyshe: then geue it the iuyce of Quinces, and lay this plaster vnto the chyldes stomache. Take Barlye meale, wyld Mulberies, and Psidium, beate all these together, and temper it with Rose water, and lay it to the chyldes stomache.

And furthermore, yf the chyldes stomache be somewhat waterishe, and slowe in digestion, then annoynt it with the water of Roses, in the which Muske hath ben dissolved, or els the water

The thirde booke. Fol. cxliii.

water of Mirtylles, and geue it to drynke the iuyce of Quinces, with a little Cloues and Sugar, or with a scruple of Nutmegges therewith tempered and mixed.

¶ Agaynst fearfull and terrible dreames.

Also sometyme the chyl dren be bered and vniquieted with fearefull and terrible dreames in their sleepe, which thyng for the most part commeth of the aboundaunce of foode, and ouermuch meate or drynkes, which for the copie and superfluitie therof, can not be conuict ne ouercome of nature, wherfore necessarily it putrifieth and corrupteth: the noysome & hidyous vapours wherof, styng by to the head in tyme of sleepe, causeth these terrible fantasies in the sleepe. And thus may it be remedyed. First take heede that ye lay not the chylde to sleepe strayght after it hath fed, and also let it liche a litle hony, swallowyng it downe, so that by it, such thinges the which be somewhat harde to digest and concoct, may the sooner be digested, and the refuse the more easly to descende into the guttes.

Item, euery day geue to the Infant halfe a dram of the electuarie called Diamuscum, or Diaplicis. Also Triacle in this case is very good, taken with mylke, as saith Rasis.

¶ Agaynst issuyng soorth of the fundament gut.

FOR the issuyng soorth of this gut, when the chylde labourerh to ease it selfe: Take Mirtylles, Acorne cuppes, red Roses dried, burnt

*2. aloes. op. lin.
f. dy. accher
f. R. C. p.*

The chyldre booke.

burnt Hartes hornes, burnt Alome, Goates
hoofe, Balauſtium, and Galles, of eche lyke much,
and ſeethe all theſe together with water, ſo long
till the water haue receaued the ſtrength of the
ingredience, and with this water beyng warme,
waſhe the gut, and ſo conuey it into the bodye a-
gayne, as I taught you in the ſeconde booke.

¶ Agaynſt Enaſmus.



Enaſmus is a diſeaſe when the
child enforceth it ſelf to the ſtoole,
and yet can do nothyng, the whi-
che thyng oftentymes chaunceth
to children, moſte commonly pro-
ceedyng of colde. Agaynſte the
which, ye ſhall uſe theſe remedies. Take Garden
Crefſes and Cummin ſeede, of eche lyke muche,
beate them together and temper them with olde
butter, and geue it to drynke to the chylde with
colde water.

Item, take Turpentine, and laye it vppon
coales, whoſe ſume let the chylde receaue be-
neathe in the fundement, the ſume beyng inclo-
ſed rounde about with clothes.

Item, take Tarre, and lyke wyſe make ſume
of it, receauyng the ſume as before.

¶ Agaynſt woozmes in the belly.

Sometymes there breede woozmes in the
guttis, of the bygneſſe and quantitie of
ſuche as are wonte to be in olde Cheeſe,
called Mytes, and ſome lyke lyce. And ſometyme
in the belly be engendred woozmes of the byg-
neſſe

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxb.

nelle of earth woormes, called Cases. Agaynst these vse this remedy, Take the water of Centum nodia, and geue it to the chyld to drynke with mylke.

Item, take of whyte Corall, the scrappng of Iuery, of Hartes horne burnt, and of Treos, of eche a scruple, of Suger candie one ounce and an halfe, of the water of Centum nodia, so muche as shalbe sufficient to temper all these thynges before, and of this make suppositaries, ministring to the chyld euery day the wayght of two drammes.

Other wyse accordyng to Rasis mynde: Take of Cummin seede as muche as shalbe sufficient, and temper it with Ore gall, makyng thereof a plaster, the whiche ye shall lay to the Infantes Nauyll.

Item, oyle Oliue taken and drunken a small quantitie thereof, is very good to kyll all maner of woormes whiche breede in the gutte, neere to the fundement: Take the fynest cotten, & thereof make suppositaries, the which ye shall annoynt with the oyle of Wormewood, or of Rue, or of the kynelles of Peaches, or the oyle of bytter Almondes, and so to conuey it into the chyldes syttyng place.

Item, it shall greatly profite the chyld, yf it be washed in the water in whiche is sodden Wormewood, and the leaues of Peaches.

Item, an oyntmente for the same. Take of Wormewood & of Lupines, of eche two drams, of
Siler

The thirde booke.

Siler montanum, Cummin, Cockle, Centorie, and Centonicum, and of Hartes horne burnt, of eche foure drammes, all these thynges beaten together, temper them in the oyle of Wormewood, or of bytter Almons the wayght of two ounces, puttyng to it foure drammes wayght of ware, and make hereof an oymntment, and annoynt the chyldes belly therewith by the fire, or in some warme place.

Item, take of Cockle two drammes, of Wormewood and Masticke of eche one dram, of Aloes, red Corall, of eche two drammes, of Coriander preparat, sixe drammes, beate all these well together. Adde also to these, of Rye meale three ounces, of Lupines beaten to powder, sixe drammes, of Saffron two drammes, temper all these in two ounces of the iuyce of Rue, and foure ounces of the iuyce of Wormewood, or of the oyle of the same, and make hereof a plaster, and lay it vnto the chyldes Nauyll the breadth of a hande.

Item, geue the chyld the wayght of foure pence of the powder of Aloes cicotrine, with fayre water fyrste sodden and sweeted with Sugar, or els with single beare, and this no doubt is soueraigne.

Item, agaynst the great and long wormes. Take of the iuyce of Wormewood, and of Ore gal, of both two ounces, of Colocinth. viii. drammes, temper all these well together, addyng to it a lyttle Wheaten meale, and make hereof a plaster, the whiche laye to the Nauyll of the chyld.

Item,

The chyldre booke. Fol. Crbi.

Item a bathe for the same.

Take Wormewood, and Gaules, and seethe them in water, and let the chylde be bathed in it by to the Naupill.

Of chaufyng or gallyng in any place of the body.

Against gallyng or chaufyng of the chyldes skynne, by reason of the acrimonie & sharpnes of vrine or sweate: Take Mirtils and beate them to powder, and strewe thereof on the place. Item, take of Irios, of the red Rose, of Cyprus, of Tragacantum, so much as shalbe thought sufficient, and beate them all, or part of them, and strewe of the powder on the chaufed places.

Item, take of the oyle of Roses one ounce, of whyte Frankencense one dramme, and melt these together, and then take eyght graynes of Camphire dissolued in Rose water, and myxt therewithall, and of all this make an oyntment, and annoynt the chaufed place therewithall.

Also Vnguentum album, and Vnguentum rubeum be good for this purpose.

Item, the decoction and fomentation with the water wherein Plantane, knot grasse, docke rootes, or Bursa pastoris is sodden, is very good for the same.

Of the fallyng sicknesse.

Sometymes these Infantes be vexed and encumbred with the fallyng sicknesse, and that two maner of wayes. One is, that it

2 q. plantagin. hb.
crusat.
libary.
Poli. Crm.
Terra figilla.
2 q.

The thynde booke.

it hath this disease strayght forth with the byrth: Cause of the whiche, is colde and yll humours in the head and braynes. Another is, that it taketh this infirmitie after the byrth by some accidentall causes, in whiche case, yf it leaue not the childe, being a manchylde, before he be .xxv. yerres of age, and the woman chylde about the tyme of haupng her fyrste flowres: yf it forsake them not in this space, neyther by the myght of nature, neyther of medicines, then is it lyke neuer to depart from them.

Agayne, yf this disease come not by nature, but by some accidentall cause afterwarde, then geue diligent heede that the Nuries mylke be very good, and conuenient to the chyldes nature. And for the same purpose yf necessitie require, it shalbe very good to purge and cleanse the Nuries bodye with due and meete medicines, and she must auoyde all suche thynges the which do coole and moysten, and to suffer the chylde to receaue no more mylke at once, then it may be able well to digest.

Agaynst this cruell disease, auchours muche commende the roote of a Pionie, only hanged about the chyldes necke.

Item, the same roote dreyed and beaten to powder, and so oftentimes geuen to the chylde to take, sometymes with drynke, sometymes with potage, pap, or mylke, or any other wayes. Lyke wyse the seede of Pionie is very good.

Farthermore, powre nowre and then into the chyldes nosethryls of oyle of Castorium, or the oyle
of

The chyldre booke. Fol. Cxviii.

of Costus, or of Euforbium : Also let the chyldre smell to Rue and to Asa fetida.

Item, to hang Viscum quersimum, which is gathered in Marche the moone decreasyng, about the chyldes necke, is verye good. Dyuers other thynges there be whiche myght be here rehearsed, but this shalbe sufficient at this tyme.

¶ Consumption or pynnyng away of the body.



When the Infant falleth away, and the fleshe rebateth, remaynyng nothing but as it were skyn and bone, and thereby the chyldre waxeth sycklye: Then let the Infante be often bathed in water, in whiche hath ben sodden the head and the feete of a weather, so long tyll the fleshe part from the bones of his owne accorde, and euery tyme that the chyldre commeth forth of the bath, fyrst let it be wyped and dzyed cleane, and then annoynte it with this oyntmente.

Take freshe Butter, oyle of violettes, and oyle of Roses, of eche one ounce, of the fatte of freshe Porker halfe an ounce, of white ware two drammes, melt all these thynges together, and make an oyntment of it, annoyntyng therewith the chyldes body.

Item, take white ware, Swines grease, sheepes tallowe, freshe Butter, melte all these thynges together, and strayne them, makyng of it an oyntment, and annoynte the chyldre withall once or twyse euerye daye. But the cheese hope
of

The thirde booke.

of restauration muste be in light, restoratye, and pure nourishing meates.

C Of lassitude, weerynesse, or heauynesse
of the chylde's body.

Sometymes it chaunceth that the chylde's members of the body be so feeble, as though it had the paulsie, so that with that partes of the bodye, the chylde can not helpe it selfe, neither can it lyft by the handes, armes, ne stand on the feete. If the chylde haue this disease whilst it sucketh, then let the Nourse be comforted, and strengthened with suche thynges the whiche haue vertue to heate and to drye. Also let the Nourse feede only vpon roasted and fryed meates, and that she forbear from mylke, fysh, and harde or salt powdred fleshe, for commonlye this disease spryngeth of colde and moyste humours, besieging the sinewes.

Farthermore, let not the Nourse vse any watered wine, or mixed, but mere and in his owne kynde, and let her bathe the chylde euer before she geue it sucke, after annoyntyng it with the oyle of Castorium, or the oyle of Costum, and let the chylde drynke euery day a quantitie of this electuarie folowynge.

Take Garden Mint, Cinamome, Cummin, drye Roses, Mastick, Fenugreke, Valeriane, Amios, Doronicum, Zedoarium, Cloues, Saunders, Xiloadoes, of ech a dram, of Muske halfe a dramme, beate all those to powder, and confict them with clarified and depured honye, make thereof an electuarie,

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxviii.

electuarie, of the whiche euery day geue vnto the chyld the weyght of two pence to drynke with whyte wine. If the chyld haue this disease in euery part of his bodye, then take an ounce of ware, and a dram of Euforbium, the which Euforbium ye shall beate in a morter with .v. oz. .vi. dropes of oyle, tyll it be perfectly beaten, then temper them together ouer the fyre, adding ther vnto so much oyle as may be sufficient to make a searecloth, and lay it to the raynes of the backe.

C Of tremblyng of the body, or of certayne members of the body, called the Palsey.

If the chyld happen to be vexed with tremblyng or shaking of the body, or the partes thereof, so that ye feare the palsy of the same parte, or that the falling sicknesse shoulde ensue: then remedie it after this meanes. Take the oyle of Roses, and the oyle of Spykenarde, and temper them together, warming it, and therewith annoynt the backe or raynes, and the other shaking members: ye may also take any other oyle the which hath vertue to warme and calefie, as the oyle of Bayes, and such other.

Item, to bathe the chyld in the decoction of Rosemarie, Sage, Tyme, Hylope, Sauery, Alexander, Smallage. &c. is very soueraigne.

If you can not cure it by this meanes, then demaunde farther counsaile of the Physitions.

Si Agaynst

The thirde booke.

Agaynst the strangury or stone, with stopping
of the bryne.

Strangury, Dissury, and the difficultie in
making of water, oftentimes chaunceth
to children by reason of the stone, or aboun-
dauce of grauell, other els many tymes of some
other viscosus, slimye, and flegmatike matter, in
maner and fourme of dregs or ragges ouerwhar-
ting and crossing the passage, whereby the brine
shoulde passe forth, in such wyse, that (without
great payne) the chylde can not make his water,
and that yet but in small quantitie at once.

Whiche of these wayes so euer it come, it shal-
be verie good to bathe the chylde by to the pa-
uyll in the decoction of Paritorie of the wall,
Hallowes, Holpoke, Lyneseede, Lillie rootes,
fenegreke, and Sauery, other els with a sponge
or double linnen cloth dypped therein, effsones
to foment the share and neather part of the belly
agaynst the bladder.

But in men chylzen cheefely foment them
on the straighes, betwene the fundement and
the coddes, the which place in Latine is called
Perineum, for there in them lyeth the necke of the
bladder. After this bathyng or fomentation,
dye the places fomented, and whilest they be yet
redde with bathyng, annoynt them with the oyle
of scorpions, to be hadde at the Apothecaries, or
els the oyle called Petroleum.

And yf farther neede shall require it, ye may
applie

The thirde booke. Fol. Cxix.

applie this plaster folowynge to the foresayde places. Take of Parsley, and of Alexander, of eche halfe an handefull, of Paritorie, Wallowes, Holyoke rootes, of eche an handfull, seethe these hearbes together in good stale ale, tyll such tyme as they besoft, then powze out the ale from them, and stampethe hearbes in a stone mortar, adding therevnto of the seedes of fenegreke and Line, of eche halfe an ounce, beyng fyrst beaten to subtyll powder.

Item of Cummin seede the wayght of foure grotes, beaten lyke wyse to fine powder, of the oyle of Scorpions, Petroleum, or other appertisse oyle one ounce and an halfe, of all these well commired together, make a plaster, and lay to the places aforesayde. To speake of any medicines to be administrad in wardes, it is but folly, for so muche as it is so harde to cause a chylde to take any thing within forth.

This difficultie in makynge water, maye ensue by other meanes, whereof we neede not to speake at this tyme.

Of goggle eyes, and looking a squint.

If the chylde haue goggle eyes, or that it looke a squint, then fyrst sette the cradell in, suche a place, that the lyght maye come directly and ryght in the chyldes face, neyther in the one syde, neyther in the other, neither aboue the head, lest it turne the syght after the lyght. Also marke on whiche side that the eyes do goggle, and let the lyght come vnto it on the

The thirde booke.

contrary syde , so to retorne the syght . And in the nyght season sette a candell on the contrary syde , so that by this meanes, the goglyng of the eyes may be returned to the ryght place . And further it shalbe good to hang clothes of diuers and freshe colours on the contrary syde , and specially of the colour of light greene , or yelow, for the chylde shall haue pleasure to behold these straunge colours . And in returnyng the eye sight towarde suche thynges, it shalbe occasion to rectifie the syght agayne . And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme , of the diseases of chyl dren after they be borne, makyng here an ende of this thirde booke for this tyme.

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxx.

Of such thinges the which shalbe entreated of in this fourth booke.

Cap. i.

Here in this fourth booke (by the leaue of God) shall briefly be declared suche thynges whiche may farther or hynder the conception of man, whiche as it may be by dyuers meanes letted and hyndered, so also by many other wayes, it maye be farthered and amended. Also to knowe by certayne signes and tokens, whether the woman be conceaued or no, and whether the conception be male or female, and finally certayne remedies and medicines to farther and helpe conception, and thereafter we wyll (acordyng to our promyse in the Prologue) set forth certayne bellifying receptes, and so make an ende of this whole treatise.

The fourth booke.

Of conception, and how many wayes it may
be hindred or letted. Cap. ii.

Here is nothing vnder heauen whiche so manysfest and playnely doeth declare and shewe the magnificent mightinesse of the omnipotent lyving God, as doth the perpetuall and continuall generation and conception of lyving thinges here in earth, by the whiche is saued, prozogen, and augmented the kynde of all thinges. And where that this almyghtie Lorde and creature hath so institute and ordained, that no singuler thing in it selfe (here vpon the earth) shoulde continually remayne and abide: yet hath he geuen from the beginning and instinced such a power and vertue vnto these mortal creatures, that they may engender and produce other lyke thinges vnto them selfe, and vnto their owne similitude, in the which alway is saued the seede of posteritie. Were not this prouision had by almyghtie God, the nature and kinde of all maner of thinges woulde soone perishe and come to an ende, the which vertue and power of generation many times doth halte and misse, by defect and the contrary disposition in the partes generant:
As ye maye euidentlye see in the sowyng of corne and all other maner of seede, so that there be in all maner of generation thre principall partes concurrent to the same, the sower, the seede sowen, and the receptacle or place receauyng

The fourth booke. Fol. Ccxi.

tyng and contaynyng the seede . If there be faulte in anye of these thre, then shall there neuer be due generation, vnto suche tyme as the faulte be remoued, or amended.

The earth vnto all seedes, is as a Mother and Nurse, contayning, clipping and embracing them in her wombe, feeding and fostering them as the Mother doth the chyld in her bellye or Matric, vntyll suche tyme as they come vnto the growth, quantitie, and perfection due vnto their nature and kinde: But yf this seede concealed in the bowels of the earth, do not proue or fructifie, then be thou sure that eyther there is let in the sower, in the seede, or els in the earth.

The earth may be ouer wateryshe, dankishe, or ouer hoate and drye, or els full of stones, grauel, or other rubbishe, or full of yll weedes, which may strangle and choke the good corne in his growyng: also the seede may be putrified, or otherwyle viciate and corrupted, and so the lyfe and spirite of it banished away and destroyed. The sower maye vnordinately strewe and caste the seede on the earth. &c. So that yf there be let in none of these partes concurrent to generation, or that the letters be remoued and done awaye, then doubtlesse wyll ensue multiplicati on and encrease ment of that kynde of the whiche the seede commeth, accordyng to the naturall enclination, the whiche almyghtie God hath enplanted and sette in the kynde of all thynges.

Siii

Howe

The fourth booke.

Howe many wayes conception may be letted,
and howe the causes may be knowen.

Capit.iii.

Every thing then, the which doth encrease in this kind, must fyrt be conceaued in þe womb and Matrix of the Mother, whiche is apte and conuenient for the receate of such seede. And as I sayd before, as there may be defect and lacke in the Mother receauing the seede, so may there be fault and defect in the sower, and in the seede it selfe also.

And in women there may be foure generall causes, by the whiche the conception may be impedit and let: ouer muche caliditie or heate of the Matrix, ouermuch coldnes, ouermuche humiditie or moystnes, and ouermuch drynes. Any of these foure qualities exceedyng temperancie, may be sufficient causes to let due conception.

Wherefore the ryght excellent Philition Hipocrates in the.v. booke of his Amphorismes saith: All suche women the whiche haue colde and dense Matrices, can not conceaue, and suche as haue moyste and watery the Matrices can conceaue, for the power of the seede is extinguished in it. Also hauing drye Matrices, conceaue not, for the seede perisheth for lacke of due nutriment and foode: but that Matrix the which hath all these qualities in temperauncie, that is fruitefull. This is Hipocrates saying, the which thyng also

also may be well perceaued by a famillier example of the sowynge of corne.

For yf it be sowne in ouer colde places, suche as be in the partes of a countrey called Sithia, and in certayne places of Almayne, or in suche places where a continuall snowe or froste, or where the Sunne doth not shyne, in these places the seede or grayne sowne, wyll neuer come to proosse, nor fructifie, but through the behement coldnesse of the place, in the whiche it is conceaued, the lyfe and quicknesse of the grayne is vtterly destroyed and adnihilate.

And farther as concernyng ouer muche humyditie, yf ye sowe your grayne in a fen or maryshe and watery ground, the seede wyll perishe through the ouermuche aboundaunce of water, whiche extinguisbeth the liuelynesse and the naturall power of the grayne and seede.

Lyke wyse yf it be sowne in such a countrey or place where is ouer great heate, not tempered with water and rayne, or yf the yere be so drye, that there come no rayne at all to alaye the extreme and feruent heate of the Sunne: then shall the seede sowne, wyther and drye awaye, and the power of it be consumed and burnt.

Also yf it be sowne in drye places, where neuer cometh rayne, or on the sande, and grauely places, in suche a place the grayne can neuer take, ne proue, ne be conceaued in it, to come to any fruite or profite.

Wherefore yf the Matrix be dissempered, by
the

The fourth booke.

the excesse of any of these foure qualities, then must ye reduce it againe to temperauncie, by such remedies as I shall shewe you hereafter. Likewise may there be defect and lacke in the man: as yf the seede be ouer hotte, the whiche the woman shall feelee as it were burnyng hot, or to colde, the which she shall feelee as it were in maner colde as pyle, or to fluye or thinne. &c. Diuers other wayes also it may be letted, whiche shall not neede here to be rehearsed.

Nowe yf the woman can not conceaue, the cause comming of ouermuch frigiditie or colde-nesse in the Matrix, that shall she know by these tokens. She shall feelee great colde about the sides, the raynes of the backe, and the Matrix, her brine shall appeare whyte and thinnishe, and sometimes also somewhat spisse and thicke, and all maner of colde thinges shall noy her, hotte thinges shall greatly comfort her.

But yf it come by ouermuche humiditie of the Matrix, that shall she knowe by these signes. If the bodye of her be of a fat & grosse disposition, yf with her flowres issue forth at the begynnyng and the latter ende of them certayne viscus and watery substaunce, and that her bryne be white, thicke, and sometyme as it were mylke. Also that she feelee great colde and payne about the Matrix and priue partes, and much dolour in her sides, and in the raynes of her backe.

And when ouermuch heate or dryth in the Matrix is cause of the hynderaunce of conception, then is the brine hye coloured, redde, or yelowe,

lowe, beyng thinne, with certayne moles appearing in the water: the woman hath greate thyrst, and bytter rysing or belchynges out of the stomache into the mouth. And many tymes they that are in this case, are very spare and leane in all their bodye, hauing also but small quantitie of flowres, the whiche thyng maye happen eyther by ouer muche watche, or ouer-much fastyng, labour, trauaile, sorowe, sicknesse, &c. But suche women whiche naturally are thus spare and leane, may very hardlye be brought to a temperancie agayne, and be made apt to conceaue. And this shalbe sufficient for this tyme, to knowe whiche qualitie by his excessse causeth sterilitie. Nowe wyll we shew how it shalbe knowen, whether lacke of conception be in the woman, or els in the man, and how to knowe whether the woman be conceaued or no, accordyng to the mynde of ryght expert Physicians.

Howe to knowe whether lacke of conception be of the woman or of the man, and howe it may be perceaued whether she be conceaued or no. Cap. iiii.



If ye be desirous to know whether the man or the woman be hinderance in conception: Let eche of them take of wheate

The fourth booke.

Wheate and Barlye cornes, and of Beanes of eche .iiij. the which they shall suffer to be steeped in their seuerall bryne the space of twentie and foure houres: then take two pottes, such as they set Beliflowres in, fill them with good earth, and in the one let be sette the wheate, Barlye, and Beanes, steeped in the mans water, and in the other the wheate, Barlye, and Beanes steeped in the womans water, and euery morning the space of .viij. or .x. dayes, let eche of them with their proper bryne water the saide seedes sower in the foresayde pottes: and marke whose potte doth proue, and the seedes therein containd doth growe, in that partie is not the lacke of conception: and see that there come no other water or rayne on the pottes: but trust not much this farre set experiment.

Item, accordyng to Hipocrates wytyng, yf ye wyll know whether the faulte be in the woman or no, then let the woman receaue into her body vnderneath, beyng well and closely closed round about, the fume of some odoriferous perfume, as Laudanum, Storax calamite, Lignum Aloes, Muske, Ambre, and such other: and yf the odour and sauour of suche thinges ascende thoro we her body vnto her nose, ye shall vnderstande that sterilitie commeth not of the womans parte: yf not, then is the defect in her.

Item, yf the take Garliche beyng pilled out of the huskes, and conuaye of it into the priue partes, and yf the sent of it ascende vppe thoro we the bodye vnto the nose, the woman is faultlesse,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxiii.

faultlesse: yf not, then is there lacke in her. These tokens, although they haue a certayne reason and appearaunce, yet be they not alwayes infallible, but only likely.

Whether she be conceaued alredy or no, ye shall knowe by these signes. First the flowres issue not in so great quantitie as they are wont, but ware lesse and lesse, and in maner nothyng at all commeth from them. Also the brestes begin to ware rounder, harder, and styffer then they were wont to be: the woman shall long after certayne thynges, otherwys then she was vsed to do before that tyme. Also her bryne wareth spysse and thychyshe by retention of the superfluities. Also the woman feeleth her Matrice very fastly and closely shutte, insomuche that as Hipocrates sayth, the poynnt of a needle may scale enter.

To knowe
whether the
woman be
conceaued,
or no.

Item, to knowe whether she be conceaued or no, accordyng to Hipocrates mynde, in the .b. of his Ampho. Geue vnto the woman when she is goyng to bedde, a quantitie of Mellicratum to drynke, and yf after that drynke she feele great payne, gnawynge, and tumblyng in her bellye, then be ye sure that she is conceaued. This Mellicratum is a drinke, made of one part wine, another part water, sodden together, with a quantitie of hony.

But yf ye be desyrous to knowe whether the conception be man or woman, then let a droppe of her mylke or twayne be mylked on a smothe glasse, or a bryght knyfe, other els on the nayle
of

The fourth booke.

of one of her syngers, and yf the mylke flewe and spreade abrode vpon it by and by, then is it a woman chyld: but yf the drop of Mylke continue and stande styll vpon that the which it is mylked on, then is it a signe of a man chyld.

Item if it be a male, then shal the woman with chyld be well colored, and lyght in goyng, her belly rounde, bigger towarde the right syde, then the left (for commonly the man chyld lyeth in the ryght side, the woman in the lefte side) and in the tyme of her bearyng she shal better digest and lyke her meate, her stomache nothyng so quesyne feble.

Of certayne remedies and medicines which may farther the woman to conceaue. Cap. v.



A sterilitie then for the most part ensueth and commeth of the distemperauncie of one of these foure fornamed qualities, wherefore the remedie and cure of the same when it chaunceth, muste be done by such thinges the which haue contrary power & operation to the excessive qualitie, for by that shall it be reduced to his temperauncie againe.

As yf that coldnesse and moistnesse excedding temperauncie in the Matrix be occasion of sterilitie, then muste she applie suche thinges to that place the which be of nature hot and drye, the which may califie and warme the place, and also drye by the yll moistnes and humours conteyned

ned in the same, hyndering conception.

And forbecause that the mosse generall and common cause of sterilitie doth proceede of colde, wateryshe, and flegmaticke humours, whiche bedeawnyng the inner sides and holonesse of the Matrix, with the porte and mouth thereof also, causeth that the seede sent from the man into the womans wombe or Matrix, can not there remaine ne cleaue: neither is the mouth or port of the wombe apte or able to close it selfe sufficiently after the reception of the seede, the flewme and slimie humours withstandyng it, the which brelesse they be discussed, or dyled away, the seede alway slippeth and slideth forth as faste as it entreth in.

Wherefore to remedie and to do away the foresayde impediment, ye shall vse the meanes whiche foloweth.

Fyrste, within a day or two after the womans Termes be passed, let her by the aduyce of some Physicion take a purgation, whiche may purge flewme and waterysheenes, and then the next or the thirde day after, let her sit in a bath by almoste to the Nauiell, in the whiche bath ye shall decocte and seethe these hearbes folowynge. Take of Bay leaues, Mallowes, redde Myntes, Mirtilles, Camomell, Moioram, Marygoldes, of eche an handfull, of Sage three handfulls, of Mercurie and Brankursin of eche two handfulls, seethe all these hearbes together in fayre water, or (yf it were for a noble woman) in halfe water, and the other halfe redde wine,

The fourth booke.

wine, in this bath let her remayne the space of a good halfe houre, and a litle before that she come forth of the bath, geue her to drinke of this electuarie folowynge.

Take of Spyke, Nutmegges, Cloues, Gallyngall, Cinamome, and long pepper, of eche the wayght of a grote, of Annise seede the wayght of two grotes, of Sage leaues dried the wayght of thre grotes, all these thynges (eche by them selues) beaten to small powder, temper them altogether in so much pure claryfied Honye as maye be sufficient to receaue all the powder, other els commixt with this powder so muche fine Suger as the wayght of the powder amounteth vnto, whereof ye shall geue vnto her at once the wayght of two grotes, with .viii. ℥. or .x. sponesfulles of good whyte or claret wine, other els with good Maluesey or Muscadell.

And all this must be done eyther fastyng in the mornynge one houre before breakfast or dyner, other els .v. or .vi. houres after dyner, so that it be not done vppon a full stomacke. But yf ye take the bath and the electuarium in the mornynge, then at nyght thre or foure houres after supper, let her receaue vnderneath her clothes, the vapour of these thynges folowynge into the priuitie. Take of Lauender dried, of vnset Tyme, Bay berries, Iuie leaues, of eche halfe a litle handfull, of whyte Frankencense the wayght of foure grotes, of Sage dried, or other two litle handfulls of Rosemarye leaues

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvi.

leaues one handfull, seethe these together in fayre water, and when they be perfectly sodden, then let the woman set her selfe ouer the vapour thereof, sitting groueling, other els set on a couer made for the nonce with a tunnell or cunduite, thorowe the which the vapour may be directed into the womans priuie passage, the neere thereby, that the vertue thereof may approche vnto the wombe or wombe port.

Ye may also in the same water dyppe wooll, or els fyne linnen cloutes, and so conuay it into the priuie passage, there to remaine the space of one or two houres. This bath, electuarie, and vapour, I counsell them that haue neede to vse them the space of thre dayes continually, and then the thyrde nyght to companie with her husbände, and by the grace of **GOD** she shalbe spedde. There be sometymes, that with the vse of the bath onlpe, or the electuarie alone, eyther the vapour, without any farther reme-dye haue ben aptified to conception, but who that vseth it as is aboue mentioned, worketh the surer way.

These shalbe sufficient remedies for want of conception, proceeding of colde, moyste, and flegmaticke humidities. Nowe yf it come by any distemperancie in heate and dryth: then let her be purged of coler, or other vnkynnd heate bred in the body, by thynges apt and meete for that purpose, and then afterwarde to vse bathes, electuaries, and vapours, of moderately cooling thynges, as of Roses, violettes, Letuse, Pur-layne,

The fourth booke.

layne, Plantaine, and dyuers other.

But forasmuch that moſte commonly the b^raptitude of conception (in women hauyng they^r health) ſpryngeth of the ſuperfluitie of colde and moſt humours (whereof we haue alredye ſpoken) therefore all other impedimentes leſte a part, ye ſhall holde ye content with this for this tyme. For yf I woulde make mention of all the occasions whereby conception may be let or impedit, then ſhoulde I here alleadge and bryng in all the diſeaſes that may happen to a woman in that partes, with the remedies thereof, whiche were a long worke, and not proper for this volume.

In this .vi. Chapter is entreated of diuers be-
liffyng receptes, as ye may here
after reade.

TH^E embelliffing or beſlyffing me-
dicines whereof I entende to ſpeake
here, be not to be vnderſtanden to
be of that ſort, whereby any Aſtiti-
cious or outwarde forraigne beautie
or ſet colours ſhoulde be acquired or gotten, the
which farre fet & damnable curioſitie, I doubt
not but that all honeſt and vertuous ſadde wo-
men do vtterly abhorre and contemne: but
here myne only meaning is, to ſhewe howe to re-
moue certayne blemyſhes, and as it were weedes
of the bodye, through the whiche many tymes
the naturall beautie thereof is obſcured and de-
faced. For as in a fayre Garden, be it neuer ſo
beauti.

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxvii.

beautifull, yet yf it be not regarded and looked vnto, the weedes entermynghlyng them selues among the good hearbes, wylł defourne and emperyshe the good grace of them. For in the earth, be it neuer so well diligented and pyked, yet alwayes therein wylł remayne some sparkes and seedes of vnlooked for weedes, the whiche euer when tyme or season serueth, nature thrusteth forth.

Lyke wyse in the bodye of man, among the good and necessary humours, is some sparke or qualitie of yll and not necessarye humours, with the whiche nature beyng offended and cloyed, expelleth and dryueth them forth sometymes into one place, and sometymes into another, accordyng to the aptitude or feeblenesse in resistance of the place receauyng it, and the force or biolencie of nature (therewith greued) sendyng it, so that the superfluities founde in the hyper part and face or superficie of the skynne, ensueth by the superfluitie and dominion of lyke matter conteyned and commixed in the vaynes among the blood, and is a great euidence and testimonie thereof. But here I wylł not speake of all kyndes of vtter diseases spryngyng of this inwarde corrupted humours, but onely of suche thynges as commonlye chaunce to men and women without any imperysment of theyr health.

As for example, fyrste I wylł bryefely declare the fylthynesse of the head, called in latin Perrigo,

The fourth booke.

In Englishe, the Dandruffe of the head, the which is, when that in hembyng and cratchyng of the head, certayne whyte scales, as it were bianne, falleth of from the head, and lyeth very thicke among and vnder the heere.

¶ Of the causes and remedies of Dandruffe of the head.

THE cause of this Dandruffe commeth by aboundaunce of fleumatike humours, commixt with the blood, the which dayly and hourelly by vncessible sweatyng, euaporateth and issueth forth of the pores, in the skinne that couereth the panbone, and as fast as it issueth forth, dryeth on the vtter superfi cie of the skinne, and there remaynyng and gatheryng together, becommeth euery day more and more, therto greatly helpyng the foresst of heere which couereth, harbereth and retayneth such superfluities, more in those places then in any other where no heere groweth. And most commonlye they that haue blacke heere, haue more store of Dandruffe then other. This humour suffered ouerlong to raigne on the head, destroyeth and corrupteth the rootes of the heeres, makyng them to fall of in great plentie, and specially in hembyng. And although this superfluitie be not cleanly, yet notwithstanding it shall be no wisdome for me to teache, ne any other herewith encombred, to learne howe to stoppe it, for feare of farther inconueniences, but onely I counsell you once in ten dayes at the least, to washe

The fourth booke. Ffol. Cxxviii.

washe and scoure the head cleane with good hye, wherein let be steeped in a linnen bagge of Annis seede, Cummin, dyed Rosemarie, Fenugreke, and the ryndes of Pomegranate, of eche lyke much: and beware that after the washyng of your head ye take no colde, before the head be perfectly dyed.

And whereas some say, that they whiche vse ofte washyng of theyr heades, shalbe very prone to head ache: that is not true, but only in suche that after they haue ben washed, roll vp theyr hayre (beyng yet wette) about theyr heades, the colde whereof is daungerous to bryng them to Catarrhes and poses, with other inconueniencies. wherfore all diligence must be had, that the head may be exactly well dyed with warme clothes, whylest the head is yet hotte of the washyng, and then neuer feare no inconueniencies, but rather conuenience and commoditie: and let this be done also fastyng in the mornyng, or els one houre before supper, or v. houres after supper: this ofte washyng shall purgfy the skynne of the head, and stedfaste the hayre from falling, leuiate and lyghten the head, with all the senses therein conteyned, and greatlye comfort the braynes.

To take away hayre from places where
it is vnseemly.

I Tem, sometymes hayre groweth in places vnseemly, and out of order: as in many maydens and women the hayre groweth so lowe

The fourth booke.

In the foreheades and the temples, that it disfigureth them: for this ye maye vse three wayes to remoue them, eyther to plucke bp one after another with pincers, such as many women haue for the nonce, eyther els with this lye folowynge. Take newe burnt Lymē foure ounces, of Arsenicke an ounce, steepe both these in a pynt of water the space of two dayes, and then boyle it from a pynt to the halfe.

And to proue whether it be perfect, dyppe a feather therein, and yf the plume of the feather depart of easly, then is it strong enough: with this water then annoynt so farre the place that ye woulde haue bare from hayre, as it lyketh you, and within a quarter of an houre plucke at the hayres, and they wyll folowe, and then washe that place muche with water wherein branne hath ben steeped: and that done, annoynt the place with the whyte of a newe layde egge and oyle Oliue, beaten and mixt together with the iuyce of Singrene or Burslane, to alaye the heate engendred of the foresayde lye. The thyrde way to remoue hayre, is with a plaster made of very drye pytche, and vpon leather applyed to the place, the hayres beyng fyrste shauen, or cutte as neare as can be with a payre of Cyfers.

Nowe when the hayres be bp by the rootes, then to let them that they growe no more: take of Alome the wayght of a groate, and dissolue it in two spoonefulles of the iuyce of Nyghtshade, or of Henbane, and therewithall annoynte the place

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxix.

place two or three tymes every day, the space of
ix. or x. dayes, and hayre wyll growe no more in
that place.

To do awaye Freckens or other spottes in
the face.

These freckens and such other spottes in the
face or other where in the bodye, may be
taken awaye by often annoyntynge them
with the oyle of Tarter, to be founde alwayes
at the Apothecaries, and surely that oyle is so
ueraigne for that purpose.

Item, take Eleborus, and seeth of it an ounce
in halfe a pynt of strong whyte wineger, tyll
halfe be consumed, then myrte therewith Hony
three spoonefulls, and the wayght of a penye of
Mercury sublimid, (to be had at the Apotheca-
ries) and seethe these together agayne tyll it be-
come thicke: with this annoynt the freckens,
and it wyll destroy them. This is also very good
for the Morphewe, and other discoloration or
staynyng of the skynne.

To destroy Wartes and suche lyke excrescences
on the face or els where.

FOR this purpose nothyng is so excellent
as euery day once, the space of three or foure
dayes, to droppe one droppe of strong wa-
ter, called Aqua fortis, on them, for this destroy-
eth them in very short tyme.

Item, the iuyce of a red Onion, and the iuyce
of Marygoldes is very good for the same.

Item, dissolue a lytle Mercury sublimid in
sayre

The fourth booke.

sayre water, and therewith drop the Wartes, and they wyll soone wither and consume away.

To cleare and clarifie the skyn in the handes, face, or other part of the body.

FOR this is nothyng better then to take one spoonefull of the oyle of Tarter, and sixe spoonefulls of water, with these comixed together, washe the handes, face, and other partes, for it scoureth, cleanseth, and purifyeth the skynne soueraignely, and wyll suffer no fylthynesse to remayne in the pores of the fleshe, and this oyle of Tarter is made on this wyse.

Take wine lyes dyed, the whiche the Golde-smithes do call Arguyl, and beate it into powder, and then fyll thereof a Golde-smithes crudible, and set it among hoate coales, tyll the Arguyl begyn to waxe blacke: then take it out of the fyre and let it coole, and bynde it in a linnen cloute, and hange it a lyttle ouer the vapour of hoate boyleng water: that done, hange this cloute with the Arguyl in a glasse with a broade mouth, so that the bagge or cloute touche not the bottome of the glasse, and the water or oyle called Tarter wyll droppe downe a lyttle and lyttle: and the sooner, yf it stande in a very colde and moyste sellar.

Item, to scoure the handes and the body, some be to washe theyr handes with the powder of Oresse, which is the roote of the blewe flouredeluce, and some with Beane floure.

Item, the yolke and whyte of egges is good for that purpose, and so is hony.

¶ To

To souple and mollifie the ruggednesse
of the skynne.

Annoynt the skyn with the oyle of sweete Al-
mondes, the same is verie good also for
chypinges of the lippes or handes.

Item, Beere suet is very proper for the same
purpose, especially beyng well washed and tem-
pered with Rose water, wherein hath ben dis-
solved two or three graynes of pure Muske.

C Agaynst todayne rylnges of pimple, through vn-
kynde heate, in the face or els where.

TAke the whyte of an egge, and beate it well
with a spoone, and then therewith commire
two spoonefulls of Salet oyle, one spoone-
full of Rose water, another of the iuyce of So-
rell, a halfe a lyttle spoonefull of Vineger, here-
with annoynt the pimples and rylnges.

To kepe and pserue the teeth cleane.

First yf they be very yelow and filthy, or blac-
kysh, let a Barber scoure, rubbe, and pycke
them cleane and whyte, then after to mayn-
teyne them cleane, it shalbe verie good to rubbe
them euery day with the roote of a Mallowe,
and to pycke them cleane that no meate remayne
and putrisie betweene the teeth.

Item, take of the small whyte pybble stones
which be founde by the water sides, and beate
the in very small powder, hereof take an ounce,
and of Masticke one dram, myngle them toge-
ther

The fourth booke.

ther, and with this powder once in. iiii. dayes rub exactly your teeth, and this shall kepe your teeth sayre and whyte, but beware ye touche not, ne bere the gummes therewithall.

Item, to stable and stedfaste the teethe, and to kepe the gummes in good case, it shalbe verpe good every day in the mornynge, to washe well the mouth with red wine.

Of stynkyng breath.

Stinck of the breath commeth eyther by occasion bread in the mouth, or els in the stomack.

If it come from the stomacke, then the body must be purged by the farther aduylse of a Physitian. If it be engendred in the mouth only, then mooste commonly it commeth of some rotten and corrupted hollowe teeth, whiche in this case must be plucked out, and the gummes well scoured and washed with Vineger wherein hath ben sodden Cloues and Nutmegges. The cleanlye keepynge of the teeth doth conferre muche to the sauerinesse of the mouth.

Of the ranke sauour of the armeholes.

This vice in many persons is verpe tedious and lothsome: the remedie whereof is, to purge fyrste the colericke and egre humours, originall causers of the same, and afterwarde to washe the armeholes oftentymes with the water wherein Wormwood hath ben sodden together with Camomell, and a lytle quantitie of Alome.

Item,

The fourth booke. Fol. Cxxxi.

Item Authours do wyte, ~~that~~ the rootes
of Artichantes (the pyth pyked out) sodden in
whyte wine & so drunke, doth clense the stench
of the armeholes and other partes of the bodye
by the brine. For (as Galen also doth testifie)
he prouoketh copie and plentie of synkyng and
bnsauerie brine from all partes of the bodye, the
whiche propertie it hath by speciall gyfte, and
not only by his hoate qualitie. And thus
here I make an ende of this fourth
and last booke.

FINIS.

1565.

